

A Course in Chess Tactics

Dejan Bojkov and Vladimir Georgiev

GAMBIT

First published in the UK by Gambit Publications Ltd 2010

Copyright © Dejan Bojkov and Vladimir Georgiev 2010

The right of Dejan Bojkov and Vladimir Georgiev to be identified as the authors of this work has been asserted in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. This book is sold subject to the condition that it shall not, by way of trade or otherwise, be lent, re-sold, hired out or otherwise circulated in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition including this condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

ISBN-13: 978-1-906454-14-2 ISBN-10: 1-906454-14-0

DISTRIBUTION:

Worldwide (except USA): Central Books Ltd, 99 Wallis Rd, London E9 5LN, England. Tel +44 (0)20 8986 4854 Fax +44 (0)20 8533 5821. E-mail: orders@Centralbooks.com

Gambit Publications Ltd, 99 Wallis Rd, London E9 5LN, England. E-mail: info@gambitbooks.com

Website (regularly updated): www.gambitbooks.com

Edited by Graham Burgess Typeset by Petra Nunn

Cover image by Wolff Morrow

Printed in Great Britain by The Cromwell Press Group, Trowbridge, Wilts.

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Gambit Publications Ltd Managing Director: Murray Chandler GM

Chess Director: Dr John Nunn GM
Editorial Director: Graham Burgess FM
German Editor: Petra Nunn WFM
Webmaster: Dr Helen Milligan WFM

Contents

Symbols		4
Introduction		5
Par	t 1: The Basics	
1	Pin	7
2	Deflection	16
3	Overload	23
4	Decoy	28
5	Double Attack	36
6	Knight Fork	44
7	Discovered Attack	50
8	Clearance	56
9	Obstruction	64
10	Removing the Defender	71
11	The Power of the Pawn	77
12	Back-Rank Mate	85
13	Stalemate	91
14	Perpetual Check and Fortresses	96
Par	t 2: Advanced Tactics	
15	f7: Weak by Presumption	103
16	The Vulnerable Rook's Pawn	111
17	Attacking the Fianchetto	118
18	The Mystery of the Opposite-Coloured Bishops	125
19	Chess Highways: Open Files	131
20	Trapping a Piece	141
21	Practice Makes Perfect	149
Solutions		158
Index of Players		188
Index of Composers		191

Symbols

check

double check checkmate

++

!!	brilliant move
!	good move
!?	interesting move
?!	dubious move
?	bad move
??	blunder
+-	White is winning
±	White is much better
± ± = = + +	White is slightly better
=	equal position
-	Black is slightly better
Ŧ	Black is much better
-+	Black is winning
Ch	championship
1-0	the game ends in a win for White
$1/_{2}-1/_{2}$	the game ends in a draw
0-1	the game ends in a win for Black
(D)	see next diagram

Introduction

Why are tactics so important?

Most of our readers will have asked themselves this question at some point. Tactics are the chess tools that everyone uses throughout every game. When we start our thinking process, the first thing that we do is calculation: "If I move here, he will answer there, then I will do this and he will answer that." We are also trying to discover new ideas, follow plans, and strategically outplay our opponents. But in every stage of the game, tactics are following us, supporting our ideas, or ruining the plans of our adversary.

The then young Alexander Beliavsky made the following comment after his exceptional tournament victory in Alicante 1978 where he scored 13 points from 13 games: "Chess is a very easy game; all you need to do is calculate lines, and everything will be OK." There is a good deal of truth in this apparently naïve statement, as our tactical ability is what enables us to survive the jungle of our beautiful game, and provides a guide in the sea of lines, and supports our reasoning and logic.

Chess is a complex game – while there are many general principles to assist us, there are also many exceptions to them: in one position one principle might work, but in a slightly different position, other factors might prevail, and only our ability to work out the tactical details will enable us to determine the right path in such cases. From a philosophical perspective, one may conclude that tactical calculations are the one true cornerstone of chess. Therefore it is no wonder that chess engines have become so strong. They can calculate millions of chess moves in a second, and they rarely make tactical errors.

What causes tactics to occur?

Two factors are of great importance: energy and time.

An energetic imbalance often enables one of the players to carry out a profitable tactical operation. For instance, overloaded, pinned, and blocked pieces have less mobility, and thus less energy. Their contact with a fully mobile piece may prove lethal for them. On the other hand, more energetic pieces can easily deliver double and discovered attacks. They may be used to deflect and decoy more important and valuable pieces, or be used to disrupt the harmony within the opponent's army by such means as blocking, interference, etc.

Time is the other factor that will prove us right or wrong in a tactical operation. Chessboard opportunities are fleeting, and we must seize every chance before the opponent is able to secure his position. By striking at the moment when our pieces have more energy, we can either win material (transforming energy into matter) or achieve the highest aim by mating the enemy king. From here the main principle of tactics is seen: with each of our moves we must create a threat. Even 'silent' moves create some threat, even if it is maybe not always obvious.

What does this book aim to do?

Our book is separated into two parts. The first one deals in turn with each of the tactical methods that are important in practical chess. We have presented ideas on how to search for each method; indeed, this was the initial intention of our work. However, a question arises: there are 14 essential tactical methods presented, and will not a large number of principles just confuse the reader? And how exactly will he know which question to ask, and which piece of advice to follow before taking

a crucial decision? In a game of chess there is a great deal to think about in addition to possible tactical ideas, and if we need to ask all these questions, our work will be too laborious.

This is not what the book is all about. Our aim is to help you develop an understanding of the principles of chess tactics, so that they become instinctive. With some practice, you will start to sense the crucial moments, to feel danger in your position and to smell when something is wrong in your opponent's camp. Inevitably a chess-player learns by trial and error, but it is possible to progress faster and with fewer failures by learning and applying chess principles. Moreover, tackling and solving carefully chosen exercises will help you subconsciously memorize typical patterns.

The first part of the book is written by Dejan Bojkov. I used a lot of personal examples of mine in this material. This is not to show you how good I am, and what an incredible tactician I am supposed to be (indeed, some of the examples are painful defeats), but because when discussing what went through a player's mind when making a particular decision, and which variations he foresaw, one can speak with far greater authority when the player concerned is oneself! Joel Lautier stated that we "first calculate during the game, and later cover our tactics with words." This emphasizes the importance of tactics in chess; strategic landmarks are primarily a guide for our tactical work.

The second part of the book is written by both authors. It features the three most common positions of a castled king and various attacking patterns against them, as well as three tactical themes that widely occur in practice. We have sought to discuss these strategic themes in the context of the tactical themes that are most relevant to them.

We hope that our work will help you feel more at home in various tactical situations, and that this will increase the pleasure that you derive from chess.

1 Pin

The pin is one of the most common tactical methods in chess. By using a line piece (a queen, a rook or a bishop) we can 'freeze' an enemy piece if moving it would expose to attack a more important piece that is behind it on the same line. If the pin is against the king, then we call this an 'absolute' pin, as the pinned piece cannot move by the laws of chess. In other cases, it is not illegal for the pinned piece to move, but doing so may involve a loss (or sacrifice) of material.

The lack of mobility of a pinned piece can be exploited by attacking it with additional units, and this often results in material gains. In order to win material, it is not even necessary to have more attackers than there are defenders: we just need to be attacking it with a lower-value unit, and so pawns are ideal for the purpose. If we attack the pinned piece with a piece of the same value, then we will just be exchanging it, as long as the pinned piece can be adequately defended.

A pinned piece is limited in its actions, and is deprived of much of its potential. However, we must bear in mind that a pin is a temporary advantage that must be used promptly. Otherwise our opponent can escape or break the pin. The following example demonstrates a number of these points in the context of a high-level grandmaster struggle.

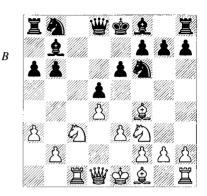
Dreev - Seirawan Wijk aan Zee 1995

1 d4 2 f6 2 2 f3 e6 3 c4 b6 4 a3 c6 5 2 c3 d5 6 cxd5 cxd5 7 2 f4 a6 8 2 c1! 2 b7

9 e3 (D)

9...5)c6

Black is behind in development. While this move is not actually bad (and may in fact be Black's objectively best move), it is risky as it



9...\(\Delta\)bd7 is the safest choice, giving White only a slight edge.

10 包b5!

The 'Trojan Horse' is untouchable due to the pin.

10...axb5? 11 鱼xb5 罩c8 12 營a4 or 12 包e5 puts unbearable pressure on the pinned knight and Black has to part either with it, or with his bishop after ...鱼c5, which leaves White completely winning. Note that White is able to attack the pinned piece with further units with great speed.

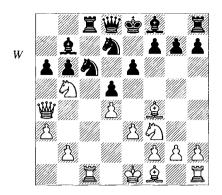
11 曾a4 ②d7 (D)

11...豐d7 is another attempt to break the pin. However, after 12 包e5 ②xe5 13 罩xc8+ 兔xc8 (13...豐xc8?? 14 ②d6++) 14 兔xe5 ± White preserves an advantage.

12 Øc7+

Dreev again wants to use a pin, this time against his opponent's queen on the c-file.

12 ②d6+ is a reasonable alternative, though Black has the defensive resource 12... ②xd6 13 ②xd6 ②xd4! (discovered attack!) 14 黨xc8 ②xf3+ 15 gxf3 營xc8 16 含d2!. Black's king



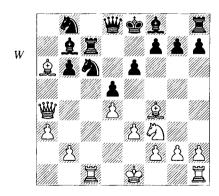
should stay in the centre, while White possesses a strong bishop-pair.

12...**≝xc7** 13 **≜xa6!?**

A tricky move, which intends to deprive Black of the option 13 ②xc7 營xc7 14 ②xa6 ②db8 15 ②xb7 (15 ②b5 ②d6) 15...營xb7 intending ...b5 and Black is ready to break the pin. After 16 ②e5 b5 17 營c2 ②xe5 18 營c8+營xc8 19 黨xc8+ 營d7 20 黨xb8 White still looks somewhat better, but a discovered attack levels the chances: 20...②b4+ 21 axb4 黨xb8 22 dxe5 黨c8 23 營d2 黨c4 =.

13... @xa6?!

Black falls in line with White's plans, and ends up in a difficult situation. 13... 2 db8! (D), providing additional support for the pinned knight, was possible here too.



In his notes Dreev points out the 'refutation' 14 兔xb7?! 罩xb7 15 兔xb8? (15 營b5!?) 15...b5 16 營a6 but misses the simple 16...罩b6 17 營a8 ②xb8, when Black wins. Obviously White would have to transpose by 14 兔xc7 營xc7 to the note to White's 13th move, where Black levels the chances.

What has gone wrong? Why does White have no way to achieve an advantage? Actually,

it shouldn't come as a great surprise, as Black did not commit any terrible errors in the opening, while White has been attacking before completing his development. However, Black's defence was by no means easy, and the chances for him to commit serious mistakes were much greater than for White. For instance, the natural 13...e5 is not a simple solution to his problems, as 14 \(\overline{x}\)xb7 cannot be met by 14...\(\overline{x}\)xb7? due to 15 \(\overline{x}\)xc6. Thus Black has to fish in troubled waters with 14...\(\overline{x}\)cb8! (or 14...\(\overline{x}\)a5!?) 15 0-0 exf4.

14 &xc7 營xc7 15 基xc6 營b7 16 夕e5

White now has a rook and a pawn for two pieces, but he controls the vital open c-file, and can still use the pin to hinder his opponent's development.

16... de7 17 b4! f6

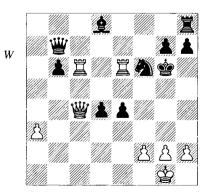
18 b5 &xb5 19 營xb5 fxe5 20 0-0!

20 萬xe6 exd4 21 0-0 含f7 22 萬c6 分f6.

20...exd4?!

20...含f7 21 罩fc1 Qd8? loses to 22 罩c7!, but in my opinion Black was obliged to castle at any rate: 20...0-0 21 罩xe6.

21 罩fc1! 含d8?!



Now a cunning use of the pin: 26 豐xd4 當f7 27 豐c4 當g6 28 豐xe4+ 當f7 29 簋xf6+! and White wins.

22 exd4!

Dreev prefers to attack, rather than defend in the line 22 罩c8+ 豐xc8 23 罩xc8+ 尝xc8 24 豐c6+ 含b8 25 豐xd7 罩c8!.

22... If8 23 a4! +-

The pawn on b6 is pinned now...

23...ዿg5 24 国1c2 国f4 25 a5 国xd4 26 g3 国d1+ 27 \g2 国a1 28 axb6 \@b8

There is no salvation anyway, since after 28... 營a6 29 營xa6 基xa6 30 b7 基xc6 31 基xc6 全f6 32 基d6 the pawn will promote.

29 罩d6+ 1-0

Advantage in Development

A pin can be especially effective when our opponent's king is still in the centre. For the sake of opening the position, pawns and even pieces are often sacrificed to set up pins along the central files or the diagonals leading to an exposed king.

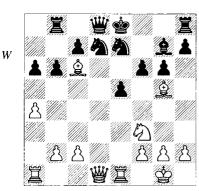
Bruzon – Flores Morelia 2008

1 d4 g6 2 ②f3 &g7 3 e4 d6 4 ②c3 ②d7 5 &c4 e6 6 0-0 a6 7 a4 b6 8 \(\mathbb{E} = 1 \) &b7 9 e5!

Black has played too passively in the opening, and White starts to open lines against his king in the centre.

12...f6 13 ②xe5! ≜xd5 14 ②xd7 provides no relief for Black.

13 兔xd5 罩b8 14 兔c6 f6 (D)



15 🗟 xf6!

"With so many pins and a development advantage, the tactical ideas are clearly justified," states the Brazilian GM Vescovi. 15 ♠xe5 fxe5

is another way to keep the king in the centre. After 16 營g4 公xc6 17 全xd8 公xd8 18 罩ad1 ± Black has three minor pieces for a queen, which usually favours the side with the pieces. However, here the black king cannot find a safe haven, and White is much better. The way that Bruzon chose is more clear-cut, and should lead to victory.

15... **≜**xf6 16 **⑤**xe5 **≜**xe5 17 **萬**xe5 **萬**f8 18 **營**d5?!

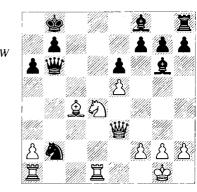
But here he goes astray. The correct 18 💆 94! \$\frac{1}{2}\$f5 (18...\frac{1}{2}\$f6 19 \$\frac{1}{2}\$e6 \$\display\$f8 20 \$\display\$xd7 +-) 19 \$\frac{1}{2}\$ae1 \$\frac{1}{2}\$xe5 20 \$\frac{1}{2}\$xe5, with the idea \$\frac{1}{2}\$e6-g8#, should lead to a win (Vescovi). In this line White exchanges one of his active rooks, but for Black's only active piece. Both knights are now partially paralysed due to the pin, and this causes pain and suffering among Black's other pieces. 18 \$\frac{1}{2}\$e6!? is also good: 18...\$\frac{1}{2}\$f7 19 \$\frac{1}{2}\$d2 \$\display\$xd7 +-. It is quite obvious that Black has to part with his superfluous material. In such situations the attacker must seek to regain the material without loosening his grip or giving up the initiative.

The white queen on d5 is hanging, and so Black relieves his position by eliminating some of White's active pieces.

20 曾xd7 ②xc6 21 曾xc6

White is still better but Black managed to save half a point with stubborn defence.

One of the features of the pin is that **breaking it is time-consuming**. In the next example Svidler cleverly converts his advantage using this fact.

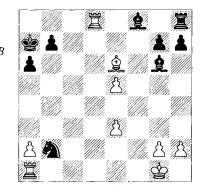


Svidler – Shirov European Team Ch, Plovdiv 2003

22 ②xe6! 豐xe3

After 22...包xc4 23 豐xb6 包xb6 24 罩d8+ 會a7 25 罩xf8 Black loses simply.

23 罩d8+ 含a7 24 fxe3 fxe6 25 &xe6 (D)



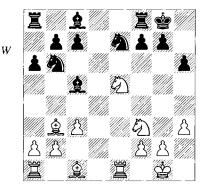
1-0

If Black wants to break the pin he needs to move the bishop from g6, and then play ...g6 and ... g7. Unfortunately, he lacks the time, since White already threatens \(\mathbb{I} \)f1. After 25... \(\mathbb{L} \)d3 he must choose his reply carefully:

- b) 26 & d5? is also a poor place for the bishop and gives Black additional time for regrouping: 26... & c4 27 e6 & xe3 (now the bishop is under attack and White cannot push the pawn) 28 & f3 (28 e7? & xe7 29 & xh8 & xd5 -+) <math>28... & c5! 29 & xh8 & g4+= with perpetual.
- c) 26 \(\Delta\)b3! g5 27 e6 (Black manages to save the pinned bishop, but White gains enough time to promote his pawn) 27...\(\Delta\)g7 28 e7 \(\Delta\)g6 (28...\(\Delta\)b5 29 \(\Delta\)c1) 29 \(\Delta\)f1 +— and there is no escape from \(\Delta\)xh8 and \(\Delta\)ff8, or the immediate \(\Delta\)ff8.

Sometimes even world champions may miss a useful pin. The following diagram provides an example.

Kramnik chose 15 🖾 d3?! and won after a long and hard battle. Instead, everything was ready for a tactical blow based on a pin. Just have a look at all his active pieces – the bishop, rook, and knight on e5, and the second knight ready to join the fray immediately. Correct was 15 🖾 xf7! 🖾 xf7 16 🖾 xe7!! removing the strong knight, and deflecting the bishop from its active position. White cannot make use of the pin

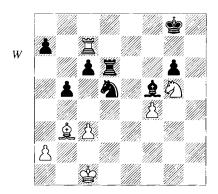


Kramnik – Krasenkow Wijk aan Zee 2003

otherwise (as 16 ②e5? is met by 16... £xf2+with ... ②bd5 to follow – Black is putting obstacles in the way of the pin, which is a typical defensive method). After 16... £xe7 17 ②e5 +-White has won an important pawn, and kept all the advantages of his position.

Both players overlooked this option. Why? "This most probably happened because White was clearly better after proceeding calmly" states Evseev, but I suspect the reason is different – Kramnik saw the idea ... £xf2+ and abandoned his calculations.

Sometimes our opponent is protecting his pinned piece with all the forces at his disposal, and we lack an additional attacker. But there are still ways of making use of the pin, such as **removing the defending forces**:



Flores – Valerga Fischer Memorial, Villa Martelli 2008

The d5-knight is pinned but it is well protected by both a pawn and a rook. We do not

PIN 11

have a way to attack it with another piece. But maybe we can break the mechanism of the defence somehow?

39 罩xc6!

Physically removing one of the defenders and decoying the second one into a double attack.

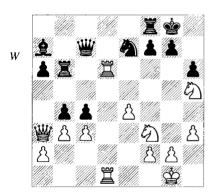
39...罩d7

If 39... \(\mathbb{Z}\) xc6, then after the fork 40 \(\mathbb{L}\) xd5+ followed by 41 \(\mathbb{L}\) xc6 White emerges a knight ahead.

40 罩c5 1-0

The job is done; there are no longer enough defenders!

When the pin is against any piece other than the king, we must be on the lookout for **pin-breaking sacrifices**. No doubt you remember Legall's Mate from your early chess education. However, there are many other examples where a pin against a queen proves insufficient to immobilize a piece.



Bosboom – Janssen Dutch Ch. Hilversum 2007

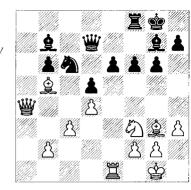
25 **省a**5

White was obviously counting on this pin to save his rook. However, there is a simple and strong reply:

25... \(\mathbb{Z}\)xd6! 0-1

Black sacrifices his queen, but wins it back with interest: 26 豐xc7 罩xd1+ 27 含h2 鱼b8 and the white queen is pinned.

Sometimes the ultimate use of a pin is not the destruction of the pinned piece itself, but another target, which the opponent cannot protect due to the pin.



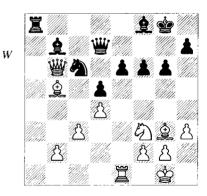
A. Sokolov – Nevednichy Yugoslav Team Ch, Igalo 1994

Black's knight on c6 is desperately pinned, but how can White strengthen his attack? There are no other pieces that can be brought to bear on the knight. However, if we take a closer look at the position we discover that Black has two weak pawns – those on b6 and e6. This is exactly what Sokolov uses in addition to the pin:

22 營a7! 罩a8

After this White wins the b6-pawn, but if 22... 2xa7 then 23 \(\delta\)xd7 wins the pawn on e6.

23 響xb6 身f8 (D)



24 c4

An energetic way of exploiting the pin. White is not only a pawn up, but he keeps the knight pinned, and shall finally win it.

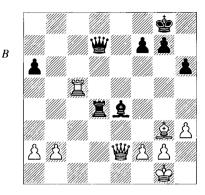
24...g5

24...dxc4 25 黛xc4 and the pin is towards the king.

25 **②c7 罩c8 26 豐xb7 罩xc7 27 豐b6 dxc4 28** 罩xe6! 1-0

The final touch. Black resigned in view of 28...豐xe6 29 豐xc7 ②e7 30 皇xc4 ②d5 31 豐b7.

A skilful opponent will generally be well aware of the dangers that a pin may cause. However, we may nevertheless be able to direct the game along the course we desire by **forcing a pin**:

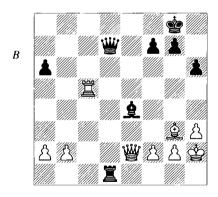


Peredy – Malanca Budapest 2003

Black first activates his rook:

30... **ad1+! 31 含h2** (D)

And now forces his opponent's king to step on a minefield:



31...罩h1+! 32 當xh1 營xh3+ 0-1

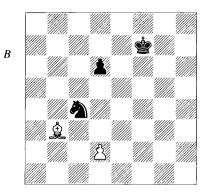
For the hyper-important tempo Black sacrificed a whole rook, and was rewarded with mate.

Defence Against Pins

So far we have only seen how dangerous the pin can be. But what should we do when we are faced with a pin on one of our own pieces? First of all, do not panic; there are many possible ways to neutralize the threats generated by a pin:

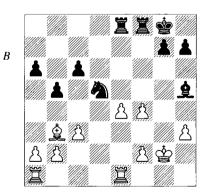
• Exchange off or move the piece against which the pin is made.

- Deflect the pinning piece.
- Support the pinned piece along the line of the pin: a pawn can be useful for this purpose.



Black plays ...d5 and puts an obstacle in the way of the pin.

- Interpose along the line of the pin so as to attack the pinning piece (with a bishop vs a bishop, for example).
- Provide additional support for the pinned piece less valuable pieces support first.
- Remove the enemy forces that could add to the attack against the pinned piece.



J. Polgar – Aronian Wijk aan Zee 2008

It looks like Black will lose his knight because of the pin against his king. However, this knight still has some energy left in it, and attacks the important f4-pawn. By using a decoy, Black wins an important tempo and neutralizes the threats with minimal material losses.

23....皇f3+!

Only move. Otherwise, after 23... 24 exd5 2xd5+25 2xd5+cxd5 26 2g3 White is

PIN 13

a solid pawn up, and has every chance to win the endgame.

24 \(xf3

Forced. Now the d5-knight and the f8-rook will combine their efforts.

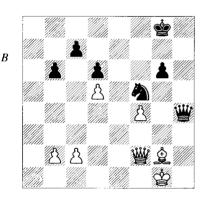
24...罩xf4+

Everyone knows that 'a pinned piece does not defend', but here we see an exception: while the d5-knight is not allowed to move by the laws of chess, by that same set of rules it nevertheless defends the f4-rook against capture by the white king.

25 \$g3 \$\mathbb{Z}fxe4 26 \$\mathbb{Z}xe4 \$\mathbb{Z}xe4\$

The position is about equal, and later ended in a draw. This saving idea had already been seen in the game Nakamura-Aronian, Gibraltar 2005.

The Pin as a Defensive Method



Aggelis – Bojkov Veria 2008

"My position is clearly better," I thought when it arose, "and I only need to find the most precise plan." Unfortunately this was far away from the truth. After some twenty minutes of deliberation I went for what seemed to be my best practical chance:

33...**∮**]g3

This naïve-looking move creates an unpleasant threat of a fork, which my opponent missed.

34 營e3?

Since 34 鱼f1?? is not possible because of 34...豐h1#, 34 鱼e4 was White's only move. Then:

a) The problem with 34... 響xf4 is that White recovers his pawn by force: 35 響xf4 ②e2+ 36

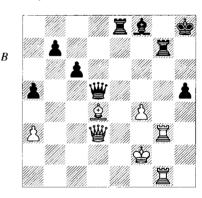
會f2 包xf4 37 會f3 g5 (37...包h5 38 息xg6) 38 會g4 =.

- b) 34... 營h3 (threatening the bishop) 35 營f3! (White must keep the knight pinned against the queen to gain enough time for defence) 35... 含f7 36 &d3 = and the worst is behind White.
- c) 34...g5!? is objectively best: 35 fxg5 豐xe4 36 豐xg3 豐xc2 with a slight edge for Black in the endgame.

34... 響xf4 35 響e7 響f7

Black won an important pawn and soon the game.

A **counterpin** is also a useful defensive method. But never forget that a pinned piece can still exert a lot of influence, despite its lack of mobility:



Miszto – Kloza Poland 1955

Black's rook is pinned and he decided to free it by means of a counterpin:

1...**≜**c5?

Unfortunately for him, the bishop remains active enough to support two raging rooks. But first White needs to gain a decisive tempo:

2 谢h7+!! 含xh7 3 罩xg7+ 含h8

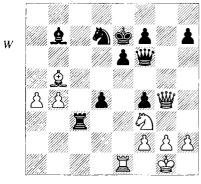
3...會h6 4 罩1g6#.

4 罩g8++ 當h7 5 罩1g7+ 當h6 6 罩g6+ 當h7 7 罩8g7+ 當h8 8 罩h6# (1-0)

While this book was being written, the chess world witnessed a remarkable demonstration that everyone can go astray, even the great champions (see following diagram).

29 (Dxd4??

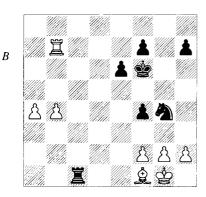
For such a high-level game, this is a terrible blunder, which effectively sealed Kramnik's fate



Kramnik – AnandWorld Ch match (game 5), Bonn 2008

in the match, and reconfirmed Anand as the world champion. Kramnik obviously saw that his back rank was weak, and also perceived that his bishop could interpose:

29... 曾xd4 30 罩d1 ②f6! 31 罩xd4 ②xg4 32 罩d7+ 含f6 33 罩xb7 罩c1+ 34 負f1 (D)

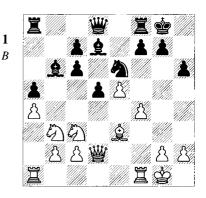


But as he confessed at the press-conference after the game, he overlooked a cunning tactic that achieves one of the ideas we have already described: "put more pressure on the pinned piece".

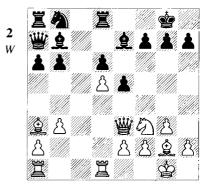
34... ②e3!! 35 fxe3 fxe3 0-1

Since "escaping from a pin is time-consuming", White cannot avoid the deadly ...e2.

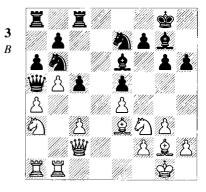
Exercises



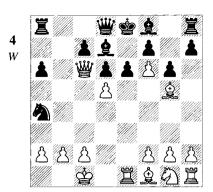
Black's pieces appear stuck, but he found a way to make use of a pin.



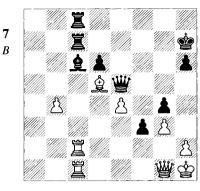
Show how White can exploit a pin.



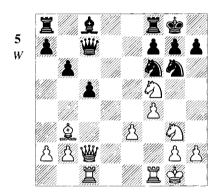
Can Black win a pawn?



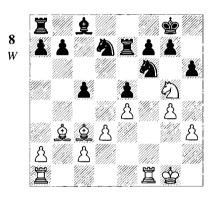
How can White conclude his attack?



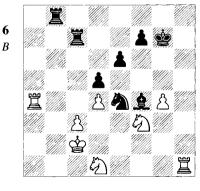
Is Black lost?



Force Black into a pin!



Must White retreat?



Create and exploit a pin by using the tactical features of the position.

2 Deflection

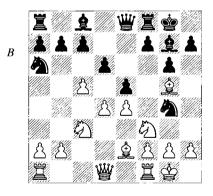
In the course of the game we try to deploy our pieces as actively as we can. We try to dominate our opponent's pieces. Some of them are needed for protection of important squares and lines, and the same goes for our opponent.

A piece can perform various functions, and it can defend another piece, or pieces, or important defensive points, especially around the king. If the square that particular piece is protecting is vital for our opponent, it may be worth our while to sacrifice material to deflect the piece.

We can use deflection in two general ways: either to profit immediately from it (gain of material or creation of a deadly mating-net) or as an instrument to gain time and, e.g., achieve a decisive attack.

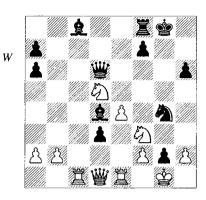
Larino – Bojkov Ferrol 2008

1 d4 ②f6 2 c4 g6 3 ②c3 皇g7 4 e4 d6 5 ②f3 0-0 6 皇e2 ②a6 7 0-0 e5 8 皇e3 ②g4 9 皇g5 豐e8 10 c5 (D)



Larino chooses a sharp line with pawn sacrifices that was developed by Ivan Cheparinov. I had analysed this line beforehand, and funnily enough it coincided with Larino's preparation for Black, as we discovered in the post-mortem.

灣xd6 17 △xa8 h3 18 △c7 hxg2 19 ≦e1 d3 20 △d5 **এd4** (*D*)



I was very happy with my position. The opening complications seem to have come to an end, and for the sacrificed exchange Black has the bishop-pair, a dangerous passed pawn and strong pressure. I considered White's only move to be 21 營xd3, giving back the exchange, and I was quite pleased with the position arising after 21...全xf2+22 含xg2 全xe1 23 三xe1 全b7 with reasonable counterplay. 21 含xg2? was one of the possible lines I was dreaming of, when all my pieces participate in a decisive assault: 21...包xf2 22 營d2 全h3+23 含g1 ②xe4+ and an easy point for me. While I was still daydreaming, my young opponent played a totally unexpected move:

21 罩e2!

This is a deep idea based on deflection for both defensive and counterattack purposes. White is again exchanging the dark-squared bishop and returning the exchange, but in this line he also activates his queen to the maximum on the long diagonal, and creates threats against Black's king. Meanwhile, my knight on g4 becomes misplaced and vulnerable. The only drawback of the idea is that Black obtains a passed pawn on e2, the power of which I failed to appreciate. After spending more than half an hour, I could not find anything better than following a forcing line:

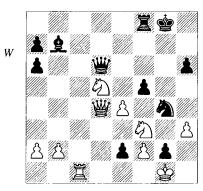
My engine first claimed that after 22....f6 Black has survival chances, but this is hardly the objective truth. White has many options; for instance, 23 罩e1 (only not 23 罩c6??, when suddenly Black's passed pawn starts kicking: 23...e1豐+ 24 ②xe1 豐xh2#; 23 豐c4!? is another idea though) 23...②e5 24 ②xe5 fxe5 25 豐c3, meeting 25...②g4 with 26 豐g3 ±.

23 h3

This move forces the exchange of all my active pieces, or at least, so I thought.

23... \(\hat{2}\)xd5?

While preparing the game as an example for this book, I suddenly discovered that my position was not yet lost and I had a wonderful combination at my disposal: 23...f5!! (D).



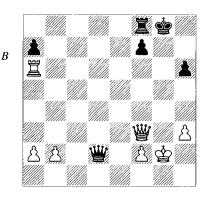
We both saw 24 hxg4 fxe4 25 罩c7 豐xc7! 26 ②xc7 罩xf3 27 豐c4+ with a double attack and ended our calculations here. This was a shame – I could have probably saved half a point thanks to the energy left in my pieces, and using the ideas of clearance and deflection. After 27...會g7 28 豐xe2 e3! (deflecting his pawn and entirely clearing the long diagonal for my bishop) 29 fxe3 罩f1+ Black's pieces manage to coordinate their efforts, and the resulting endgame is drawn; for example, 30 豐xf1 雲xf1 豐+ 31 會xf1 會f6 32 會f2 會e7 (trying to trap the knight; 32...會g5!? 33 會g3 ②c8 is a fair alternative) 33 e4 會d6 34 ②d5 ③xd5 35 exd5 含xd5 =.

24 exd5 ②f6 25 罩c6 豐xd5 26 豐xf6 豐xf3 27 豐xf3 e1豐+ 28 含xg2 豐d2 29 罩xa6 (D)

White has won a pawn, and soon the game.

29... 響xb2 30 萬xh6 萬d8 31 萬a6 響g7+ 32 響g3 萬d7 33 萬a4 響xg3+ 34 fxg3

The rest of the game is not important to our theme, so I shall not examine it in detail. The



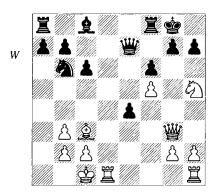
young Spaniard comfortably converted his advantage into victory.

 34...\$g7
 35
 基a6
 基c7
 36
 h4
 基c2+
 37
 \$\frac{1}{2}\$ h3

 基c7
 38
 h5
 基d7
 39
 a4
 基c7
 40
 a5
 基b7
 41
 \$\frac{1}{2}\$ h4

 基c7
 42
 g4
 基b7
 43
 h6+
 \$\frac{1}{2}\$ \$\frac{1}{2}\$ \$\frac{1}{2}\$ h7
 45
 \$\frac{1}{2}\$ \$\frac{1}

How does deflection work?



Fleuren – Murray Bunratty 2008

Black's queen is obliged to defend the g7-square. If we can somehow deflect it, we can deliver mate.

21 身b4! 豐f7

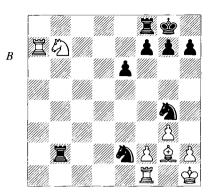
If 21...c5, we can simply grab the pawn, and the same problems remain for Black.

22 &xf8 營xf8

White has already won an exchange, but the queen still needs to guard the g7 point, which makes a further blow possible.

23 罩d8! 1-0

How to spot which piece to deflect



Krasenkow – Bacrot Wijk aan Zee 2008

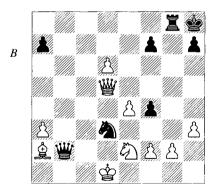
If White's rook were not defending the vital f2-pawn, it would be mate in one with ... \(\infty xf2\)#. That is why Bacrot deflects the rook.

31... **黨b1!** 32 h3

As we know, the rook is poisoned (32 \(\bar{2}\)\text{xb1} \(\bar{2}\)\text{xf2#), but now the same rook is pinned by its counterpart and Black can grab a pawn:

32... 🗓 xf2+ 33 \$\dip h2 \box\textsiz xf1 \dip dc3 0-1

Two extra pawns are more than enough for an easy win.



Papin – Ovechkin Voronezh 2008

Let us analyse the situation from Black's point of view.

Material is approximately equal, or else a little worse for us — we have an exchange for a couple of pawns. Our king looks safer than the opponent's. Obviously our chances are in the middlegame, in the form of an attack against

the white king, which is stuck in the centre. We have two excellent attacking pieces: the queen and the knight. However, the black rook is not showing its full potential, and right now our knight is under attack.

If we now take a look at the opponent's camp, which piece is his best defender? That's right: the knight. It protects vital squares around the king, including c1, and shields important squares on the second rank.

Is there a move that can achieve two goals at the same time: activate Black's last piece, and get rid of White's best defender? Yes, there is:

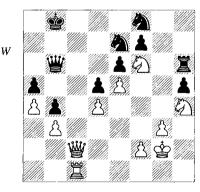
36...f3!

This move deflects the pawn and frees an important square.

0-1

White resigned in view of 37 gxf3 罩gl+!! (now deflecting the knight) 38 公xgl 豐cl+ 39 含e2 分f4#.

Successful deflection is usually based on an **overload** (more on this theme in the next chapter): one of our opponent's pieces has too many duties to take care of. If we spot such a piece, we can bravely attack it – it usually has nowhere to go. It is even better if we can target that piece while also attacking another one, as in the following example:

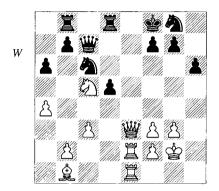


Kr. Georgiev – Saada Saint Affrique 2007

The e7-knight has to guard the vital c8-square, and Georgiev finds a way to deflect it: 53 Ø 98! 1-0

This is also a double attack. Black needs to take by 53...②xg8 but then 54 營c8+ 含a7 55 国c7+ wins a queen, and later a double attack will deal with Black's knights – as an exercise, find it yourself!

Here it is more complicated:



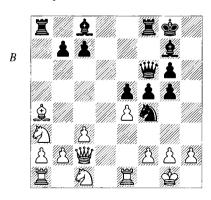
Fedorchuk – Buhmann World Under-18 Ch, Oropesa del Mar 1999

Black's king is in a precarious situation, but White needs to hurry to exploit this circumstance. Both the eighth rank and the d7-square seem well protected but White mates with the help of two deflections:

26 營f4!! 1-0

This is not just an exchange, but a deflection. After 26... 豐xf4 (26... 豐c8 27 ②e6+), 27 冨e8+! is the second deflection: 27... 冨xe8 28 ②d7#.

Before the decisive break, we may need to identify and deal with the **main defenders** in order to improve our chances for success.



Muse – Mirumian Berlin 1999

When we build our attack, we try to create a superiority of forces in the part of the board

where the main battle will take place. Deflecting the opponent's forces can tip the balance in our favour before the direct assault. It is especially useful to divert the enemy queen, since this is the most powerful defender.

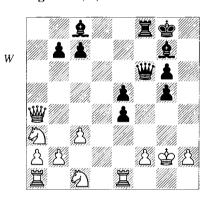
22...**≌**xa4!

In order to weaken White's castled position, Black sacrifices an exchange to deflect the queen, and to gain precious time. The immediate implementation of his tactical idea by 22...②xg2? is not yet justified: 23 ②b3+! 當h7 24 當xg2 fxe4 25 當g1 (the queen is protecting the vital f2 point) 25...②h3 26 ②d5 +— and the bishop is participating in the defence.

23 營xa4 ②xg2!!

Shattering the white king's defences.

24 \(\price \text{xg2 fxe4} \((D) \)



Black now opens all the files and diagonals for his remaining pieces. White's queen is too far away at the moment when it is most desperately needed, and Black wins in all lines.

25 罩e2

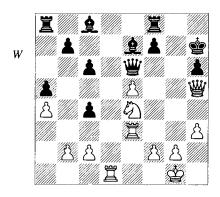
Or:

- a) 25 罩f1 豐f3+26 曾g1 兔h3 -+.
- c) 25 營c4+ 含h7 26 營e2 (26 營f1 含h3+!! 27 含xh3 營f3#) 26....含g4 27 營e3 含f3+ 28 含f1 營f5 29 冨e2 and now 29...營g4 or 29...冨d8.
- d) 25 營xe4 營xf2+ 26 含h1 全g4!! and Black wins.

25... 響f3+ 26 會g1 e3! 27 響c2 食h3 0-1

Black invested an exchange in order to deflect the white queen and as a result won two tempi, which was enough to give his attack a decisive impetus.

In the examples that we have examined so far, deflections of key defenders were made in the name of checkmate. Sometimes though we deflect pieces with more prosaic ideas, such as material gain:



Hebden – E. Moser European Union Ch, Liverpool 2008

The pawn on h6 is pinned, and if we imagine for a second that the bishop on e7 does not exist then there will be a decisive fork by 2g5+. This thought leads us quickly and logically to find the decisive idea:

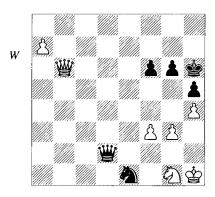
18 罩d6! **急xd**6

The capture of the rook is forced, since after 18... 当f5 19 置xh6+ 含g7 20 置g3+ Black is getting mated.

19 ②g5+ 1-0

Black also loses the bishop, so she decided to call it a day.

Deflection in Defence



McNab – Berelovich Jessie Gilbert Memorial, Coulsdon 2008

White has advanced his a-pawn too quickly, and now it looks as if he might have to resign due to the threat of 80... ₩g2#. However, a deflection saves the day:

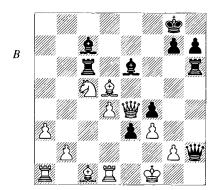
80 營e3+!

This deflects the black queen away from threatening mate, and gains a vital tempo.

80... **營xe3 81 a8** 營

White's sacrifice turns out to be of just a pawn after all! Now he threatens mate on h8, and this gives him the time he needs to parry Black's mating ideas.

We should now look at a more sophisticated case of deflection.



Sulashvili – G. Guseinov Baku 2008

The following move is one the most profound deflections I have ever seen:

28...**쌀h**5!!

An unbelievable winning move. The point? The answer comes from a logical analysis of the position. White's position is quite shaky, but straightforward methods do not give Black anything: 28... 温g6? 29 含e2! or 28... 当h1+? 29含e2 当xg2+30含d3. To succeed, he needs to deflect both of White's active pieces from the central squares – thus freeing either the c-file for his rook or the a6-f1 diagonal for his bishop.

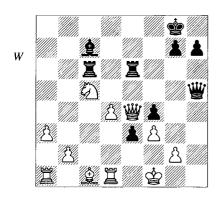
29 \(\mathbb{Q} \) xe6+

In case of 29 2×6 2×4 ! the diagonal is freed! (or first 29... 1×6 1×6 and now 30... 2×4 !).

29 鱼a2 鱼xa2 30 萬xa2 萬he6! is similar to the game.

29...罩hxe6! (D)

DEFLECTION 21

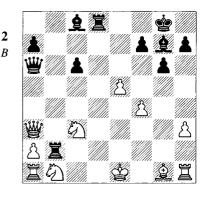


30 **對xe6+**

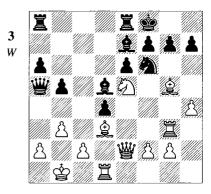
Desperation, but in the line 30 ②xe6 營h1+31 含e2 營xg2+32 含d3 comes the key point behind Black's 28th move: 32...營c2#. Black also wins quickly in the line 30 營c2 e2+31 營xe2 營h1+32 含f2 簋xe2+33 含xe2 營xg2+, etc.

A double attack. Black recovers the material with interest and continues attacking.

34 當c3 營xe6 35 d5 盒e5+ 36 當c2 營a6 0-1

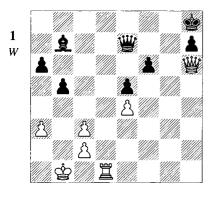


Black needs to find a nice touch.

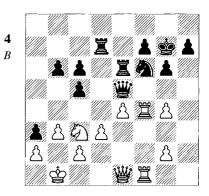


White uses two deflections to give mate.

Exercises



A simple exercise just to check you are concentrating...

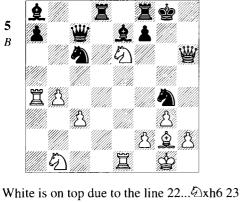


White's b2-square and back rank are both weak. Take advantage of this!

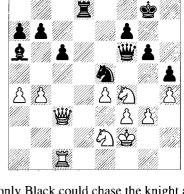
6

7 В

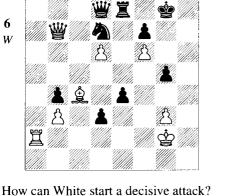
8

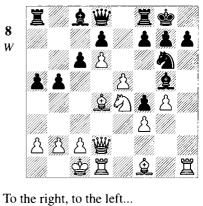


②xc7 **2b7** 24 b5. True or false?



If only Black could chase the knight away

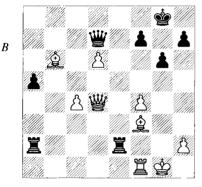




3 Overload

An overload occurs when a piece has more than one duty, and when it is forced to carry out one of these tasks, this leaves it unable to perform its other functions. For example, a piece might be protecting two or more pieces simultaneously, or might be guarding a number of critical squares.

The removal or annihilation of an overloaded piece may bring about a total collapse of the defence:



Fahnenschmidt – Ma. Tseitlin European Seniors Ch, Bad Homburg 2005

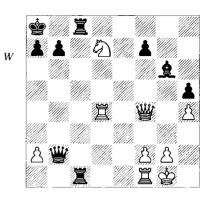
Black would like to give a standard mate with his rooks on White's second rank. For the moment the only piece that prevents this is White's light-squared bishop. Therefore Black can consider any means to remove this piece, even a sacrifice of his most valuable piece:

27...灣g4+! 0-1

28 皇xg4 (28 曾h1 罩xh2#) 28...罩g2+ 29 曾h1 罩xh2+ 30 曾g1 罩ag2#.

Indeed, an overloaded piece only offers a weak or fake defence to the objects it is apparently covering (*see following diagram*).

The black queen is protecting the rook on c1. However, this protection is only partial and insufficient since the queen will need to retreat if a major danger arises:

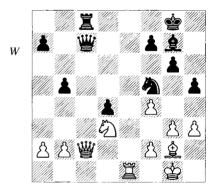


Humpy Koneru – Murali Krishnan Mumbai 2008

27 ②b6+! 豐xb6

The priority is to safeguard the king, so Black cannot afford 27...axb6 allowing instant mate by 28 \mathbb{Z}a4#.

An overloaded piece is also limited in its mobility due to its onerous duties:

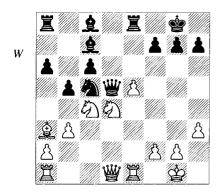


Lechtynsky – Tupy Pribram (rapid) 1996

The c8-rook needs to protect the black queen. This means that White can easily threaten it even on the back rank, which such a rook would usually cover very naturally:

25 罩e8+! 1-0

We can also exploit an overloaded piece to gain time to improve our own pieces.



Gil Alba – Fernandez Cardoso Santa Clara 2003

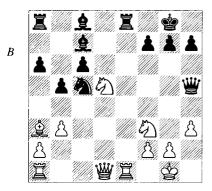
The black queen is tied to the defence of its knight, and White exploits this fact to prepare a deadly discovered attack:

1 ②e3! 豐xe5 2 ②f3 豐h5

2... 幽d6 is a self-pin, losing to 3 幽c2 魚b6 4 ac1 +-, while 2... 幽e7 walks into a discovered attack: 3 公d5 +-.

Thus White has chased the queen to a bad square, while simultaneously improving his own pieces.

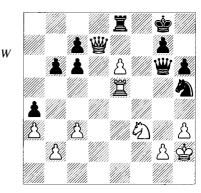
3 包d5!! (D)



3...**≜**xh3

- 3... Zxe1+ 4 Wxe1 2xh3 (4... 2e6 5 2xc7 2xc7 6 We7 +-) is the most resilient.
 - 4 基xe8+ 基xe8 5 ②xc7 豐g4 6 ②h4 1-0

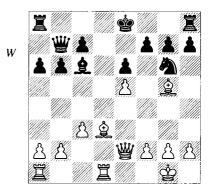
An important skill is being able to **spot which piece is overloaded**.



Rowson – Brunello Palau 2008

Black is holding the position due to his queen – it protects both the rook and the knight. This provides the setting for an overload, which can be exploited here by removing the queen by exchanging it off:

33 \(\mathbb{G}^{\tau} \) 7+! \(\mathbb{G}^{\tau} \) 7 34 \(\ext{exf7} + \mathbb{G}^{\tau} \) 7 35 \(\mathbb{Z} \) xh5 \(\mathbb{Z} \) 2 36 \(\mathbb{Z} \) h4 \(\mathbb{Z} \) xb2 37 \(\mathbb{Z} \) xa4 \(\mathbb{C} \) 6 38 \(\mathbb{A} \) 1-0



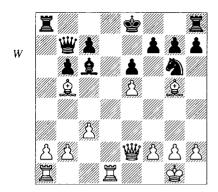
G. Guseinov – Natarajan Dubai 2008

In many cases it is not obvious which piece can become overloaded. In this example White is attacking the a6-pawn twice, and Black is defending it twice. However, if White captures with the bishop, he opens a line for his rook, and a hidden threat of mate on d8. This means that Black also needs his rook on his back rank – thus it is overloaded, and its defence of a6 turns out to be illusory:

17 **এxa6! 豐a7 18 逸b5! 豐b7** (D)

Black cannot even limit the damage to one pawn, since White now uses a double pin to

OVERLOAD 25

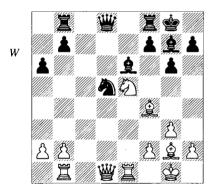


emphasize another overload – this time of the c6-bishop.

19 營e4! 1-0

Another way to view this example is that Black delayed castling too long and White was able to deflect the sole defender of the back rank to deliver mate.

One thing is certain: an overload is usually exploited by a deflection.



Adly – Ramesh Dubai 2008

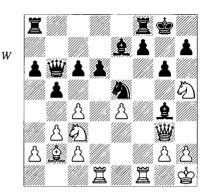
The black queen and the e6-bishop need to guard the d5-knight. One of these pieces can be deflected:

18 ②xf7! 1-0

After 18... 2xf7 19 2xb8 the queen needs to abandon the knight: 19... 2xb8 20 2xd5 +-.

Sometimes a whole position turns out to be loose because first one piece and then another is overloaded.

In the following position, the e7-bishop is overloaded since it needs to protect both the d6-pawn and the important f6-square:



Miroshnichenko – Turzo Budapest 1999

19... **Q**xh5 is met by 20 **Q**d5 +- with the idea **Y**xe5.

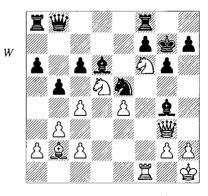
20 ②f6+ **含g7**

20...會h8 21 營h4 +--.

Now the key piece becomes the e5-knight, which has too many duties: it is the protector of the g4-bishop, but also has the higher duty of guarding its king.

21 公cd5! 曾b8 (D)

Black provides extra support for his knight, since his position will collapse after 21...cxd5 22 兔xe5 兔xe5 23 營xe5 全h8 (23...營b8 24 ②e8++ 全h6 25 營g7+ 全g5 26 h4+ 全xh4 27 營h6+ 兔h5 28 富f4+ 營xf4 29 營xf4+ 兔g4 30 ②f6 h5 31 全h2 followed by g3#) 24 ②xg4+ f6 25 ②xf6 +— with the point 25...營b8 26 ②e8+ 營xe5 27 萬xf8#.

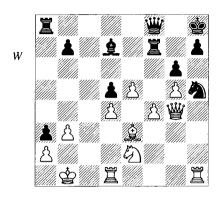


However, it is now the bishop that becomes overburdened.

22 c5!

Black's defences disintegrate under White's pressure.

However, we cannot expect a skilled opponent simply to leave his pieces overstretched in their defensive tasks. Thus we need to consider how we can create overloaded pieces.



Shavtvaladze – Avrukh European Clubs Cup, Kallithea 2008

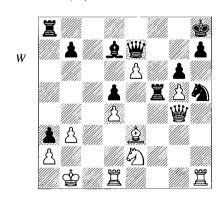
The most usual way is by decoying pieces to vulnerable squares.

31 e6

Black now saw a pin and became overambitious, missing White's cunning reply:

31... **曾e7?** 32 f5!

This decoys the rook to a vulnerable square. 32... xf5 (D)



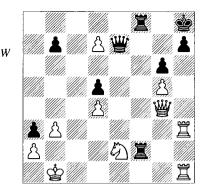
Now the g6-pawn needs to protect both a rook and a knight, which is beyond its abilities. White therefore won material:

33 exd7 營xe3 34 萬xh5 萬f2 35 萬h3 營e7

35... 資xe2 loses after 36 資xe2 罩xe2 37 罩c3 罩f2 38 罩c8+ 罩f8 39 罩xa8 罩xa8 40 罩c1.

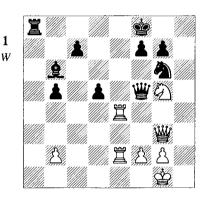
36 \(\mathbb{Z}\) dh1 \(\mathbb{Z}\) af8 \((D) \)

White now found one more overloaded piece – the f8-rook which must defend its colleague on f2:

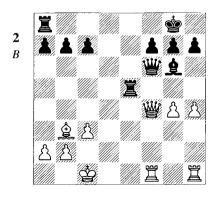


37 d8營! 1-0

Exercises

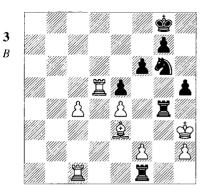


This is a warm-up exercise.

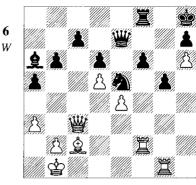


Another warm-up.

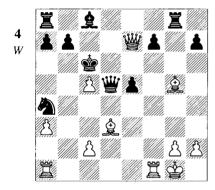
OVERLOAD 27



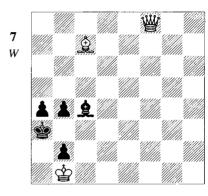
There is no breathing space for White's king, but a soldier still guards him.



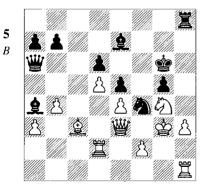
Create an overloaded piece in Black's camp.



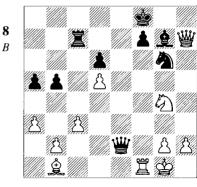
White can win most neatly by exploiting an overloaded piece in Black's camp.



Mate in three.



If one of White's pieces were not there it would be mate...



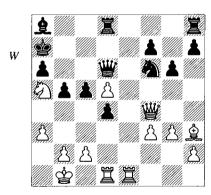
Black is worse, but what is his best practical try?

4 Decoy

Decoy is a tactical method in which we try to force a piece to go onto a particular unfavourable square. We can also call this square **mined**. Once the piece is on this square, we can either win the decoyed piece immediately, or employ some other tactical method (pin, double attack, discovered attack, etc., or even mate) that is possible due to the piece's unfortunate presence on this square.

Decoy can also take the form of dragging out our opponent's king in front of his pawn-chain. Without his safe shelter, the king becomes an easy target for the attacking pieces.

When speaking about the dragging out of a king, Garry Kasparov's ingenious victory over Veselin Topalov naturally springs to mind. Although every chess lover will no doubt have marvelled at this masterpiece already, I would like to go over Kasparov's combination and some of the main variations, with a particular emphasis on the leading role played by decoy:



Kasparov – Topalov Wijk aan Zee 1999

24 \ Xd4!! cxd4?

As is now well-known, Topalov should have played 24...當b6!.

25 罩e7+! 含b6

The king is forced to go for a long and dangerous walk, since after 25... 當b8 26 營xd4! White has enough resources to execute Black's

king in his own camp; for example, 26... ②d7 (26... 豐xe7 27 豐b6+ 鱼b7 28 ②c6+ 含a8 29 豐a7#) 27 鱼xd7 鱼xd5 28 c4! 豐xe7 29 豐b6+ 含a8 30 豐xa6+ 含b8 31 豐b6+ 含a8 32 鱼c6+! 鱼xc6 33 ②xc6 +-.

26 營xd4+ 🕸xa5

In the event of 26... 豐c5 27 豐xf6+ 豐d6 Kasparov intended to sacrifice his bishop by 28 鱼e6!! in order to gain a couple of tempi, and to keep Black's pieces locked up: 28... 鱼xd5 (or 28... 鱼he8 29 b4! +-) 29 b4! 鱼a8 30 豐xf7 豐d1+31 當b2 豐xf3 32 鱼f5 +-.

27 b4+ **\$a4**

Black's king has been dragged out from his pawn-shield. Now the play becomes highly concrete because any check by White is likely to be mate. But in order to give the cherished check, White needs to deal with Black's many defenders with great precision. Various deflection and decoy ideas will support his mission.

28 幽c3

Later it was discovered that it is even better to start with 28 \(\mathbb{Z} a7! \), which prepares a capture on a6 in order to deflect various defensive forces:

- a) 28... 公xd5 29 罩xa6+!! 豐xa6 30 豐b2 公c3+31 豐xc3 兔d5 32 含b2 and 豐b3+ is inevitable, whereafter the modest c-pawn has the pleasure of delivering mate.
- b) 28.... axd5 29 響c3 罩he8 30 含b2 罩e2 31 響c7! +- and Black's bishop blocks his queen's access to d4.
- c) 28...\(\hat{2}\)b7 (the best defence is counter-deflection) 29 \(\beta\)xb7 and now:
- c1) 29...②xd5 30 ②d7! (the threat is 31 ②xb5+, and the white bishop decoys the black rook onto a mined square) 30...②xd7 31 營b2 ②xb4 (the only defence) 32 ②xd7 (now the idea of 30 ②d7 is revealed the queen on d6 is overloaded!) 32...營c5 33 ②d4 ②c8 34 營b3+ and White wins the queen.

DECOY 29

營a2+ (otherwise mate from a3, with or without a preliminary check on c3) 35 含xa2 含xb4+ 36 含b2 置c6 37 息f1 置a8 38 營e7+ 含a5 39 營b7+-

Kasparov's combination is especially beautiful for the juggling with his last three remaining pieces that manage always to be one move ahead of the powerful black army. The exuberance of defensive options for Black is another vintage point of his exceptional combination.

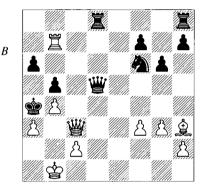
28... **曾xd5**

28... ♠xd5 29 ♦b2 is simple, with mate from b3 with the pawn as above.

29 罩a7!

29 營c7? 營d1+ will only lead to perpetual check.

29...臭b7! 30 罩xb7 (D)



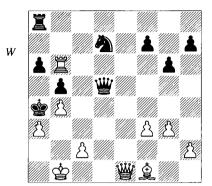
30...營c4

30... \(\begin{aligned} \begi

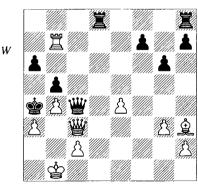
However, in defence the principle of maximum involvement of the pieces is also valid, and Black had to try 30... Ehe8!, which should nevertheless lose, but gives White the most chances to go wrong: 31 置b6 置a8 32 复f1!! (the flashy 32 兔e6? 置xe6 33 置xe6, with the idea 34 含b2, is refuted by the no less spectacular 33... 豐c4! 34 豐xc4 bxc4 35 置xf6 含xa3 36 置xf7 置e8 and Black's advantage in the endgame is overwhelming; in this line the king turns from prey to a hunter) and now:

a) In the event of 32... 三ed8 Kasparov points out a calm way to build the familiar mating-net: 33 三c6! ②h5 (not 33... ②d7 34 三d6!) 34 三c5 三ac8 35 �b2! +— and after the forced exchange of the queens White liquidates to a winning endgame.

- b) 32... 包d7 33 罩d6! (taking both vital squares from the queen) 33... 罩ec8 34 豐b2 and White wins.
- c) 32... **Ze6** also fails to save Black: 33 **Zxe6** fxe6 34 **含**b2 +--.
 - d) 32...罩el+! 33 豐xel 包d7 (D).



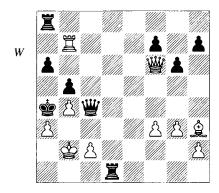
Suddenly the white rook is trapped, but 34 国b7!! 營xb7 (after 34...包e5 we witness a double attack for the sake of deflection: 35 營c3 營xf3 36 总d3 營d5 37 总e4 +-) 35 營d1! is an incredible ambush. Even from the first rank the queen can be fearsome. 35...含xa3 is met with 36 c3 followed by 營c1+, 營c2+ and 營a2#.



After 32 \$\mathbb{\mathbb{Z}}a7!! \$\mathbb{Z}d1+ (32...\mathbb{\mathbb{Z}}a8 loses to 33 \$\mathbb{\mathbb{W}}e3\$ and \$\mathbb{\mathbb{C}}b2\$, as usual) 33 \$\mathbb{\mathbb{C}}b2 \$\mathbb{\mathbb{W}}xc3+ 34 \$\mathbb{\mathbb{C}}xc3 \$\mathbb{\mathbb{Z}}d6\$ 35 \$\mathbb{\mathbb{C}}5 \mathbb{\mathbb{Z}}68\$ Black has managed to liquidate to an endgame, but his king is still in danger. As before, any check is fatal for him, and the white bishop now enters the game: 37 \$\mathbb{\mathbb{Q}}g2! \$\mathbb{Z}d8 (37...\mathbb{\mathbb{Z}}xe5 38 \$\mathbb{\mathbb{L}}b7 + with the idea 38...\mathbb{\mathbb{Z}}e66 39 \$\mathbb{\mathbb{Q}}d5) 38 \$\mathbb{\mathbb{L}}b7 \$\mathbb{Z}d7 + followed by 41 c4 and either 42 \$\mathbb{L}xa6+!!\$

and \(\hat{Q}xb5\)#, or (in case of ...\(\beta\)db8 to hamper this plan) \(\hat{Q}g4\)-d1\(\text{-}\)!. Magnificent geometry!

31 **營xf6 含xa3**



After 33 \(\mathbb{\omega}\)b6! \(\mathbb{\omega}\)d4+(33...a5 34 \(\mathbb{\omega}\)d7+-)34 \(\mathbb{\omega}\)xd4 \(\mathbb{\omega}\)xd4 \(\mathbb{\omega}\)xd4 \(\mathbb{\omega}\)xd4 \(\mathbb{\omega}\)xd4 \(\mathbb{\omega}\)xd4 \(\mathbb{\omega}\)xd4 \(\mathbb{\omega}\)xd4 \(\mathbb{\omega}\)xd4 \(\mathbb{\omega}\)xd5 \(\mathbb{\omega}\)xd

This additional decoy idea – which is essential for this line to work – was foreseen well in advance by Kasparov.

33...**\$**xc3 34 ₩a1+ **\$**d2

34...會b4 35 豐b2+ 含a5 36 豐a3+ 豐a4 37 罩a7+ +-.

35 營b2+ 含d1 36 息f1!

Decoying the queen to a poor square.

36...罩d2

36... 響xf1 37 響c2+ 當e1 38 罩e7+ reveals one of the points behind 36 急f1.

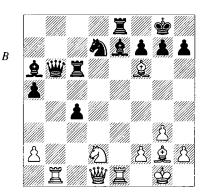
37 罩d7! 罩xd7 38 鱼xc4 bxc4 39 營xh8 罩d3 40 營a8 c3 41 營a4+ 含e1 42 f4 f5 43 含c1 罩d2 44 營a7 1-0

Glorious, is it not? Without any doubt this is one of the most beautiful chess combinations ever.

The next game was also praised highly by its winner, who claimed that it was his best to date:

Krasenkow - Nakamura

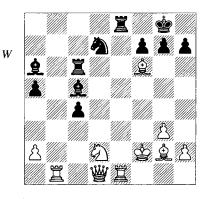
Barcelona 2007

1 ♠f3 ♠f6 2 c4 e6 3 g3 d5 4 ♠g2 ♠e7 5 0-0 0-0 6 b3 a5 7 ♠c3 c6 8 d4 ♠bd7 9 ⊯c2 b6 10 

In this crazy position where three of Black's pieces are hanging, Nakamura finds a way to create a forceful attack:

Dragging the white king in front of the pawn-chain. Black will have enough material to mate even without his queen. Krasenkow later admitted that he saw this possibility immediately after he took on f6, but it was already too late by then.

22 \(\dot{\pi}xf2 \(\dot{\pi}c5+! \((D) \)



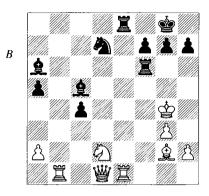
23 **ġ**f3

After 23 當f1 the winning move is 23...c3+! (but not 23...當xf6+?? 24 盒f3 c3+ 25 當g2). Remember the principle of involving as many pieces in the attack as you can. After 24鼍e2 c2! (deflection!) 25 豐xc2 魚xe2+ 26 當e1 魚d3+ Black wins back the queen, as well as at least a whole rook as compensation.

23 皇d4 皇xd4+ 24 當f3 置f6+ 25 當g4 包e5+ leads to a similar position as in the game, with

DECOY 31

the sole difference that the bishop is on d4 instead on c5, which is not important.



For the queen, Black has only a bishop and two pawns, but his attack is unstoppable. The most important thing when dragging a king in front of his pawn-chain is to make sure that it cannot be securely protected by any of its pieces.

24...@e5+!

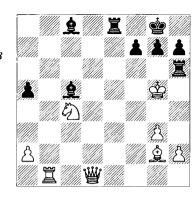
This important move had to be foreseen in advance. The attack must be conducted with tempo (preferably with checks, as they are so forcing). This move also opens an important diagonal for the light-squared bishop – the last piece to join the hunt.

25 **⋭**g5

It is more resilient to eliminate the black knight by 25 基xe5, but it does not help either: 25.... 2c8+! 26 基f5 (you should always consider moves like this when sacrificing huge amounts of material!) 26... 2xf5+27 含h4 基h6+28 含g5 2c8 (29... 2e3# is a threat) and then:

- a) 29 包f1 萬g6+30 含f4 萬f6+31 含g5 萬e5+32 含h4 萬h6+33 營h5 萬exh5#.
- b) 29 幽e1 allows a forced mate, but you do not need to calculate this line in advance, since the simple swap of the rook for the queen is enough to secure a winning endgame. For those interested, here is the mating line: 29... 23 30 ②e4 (30 ②f3 置g6+ 31 \sightharpoonup h4 \sightharpoonup e7+ 32 ②g5 \sightharpoonup f8+ 31 \sightharpoonup f4 \sightharpoonup g6+ 31 \sightharpoonup f4 \sightharpoonup g6+ 32 \sightharpoonup g6+ 33 \sightharpoonup f4 \sightharpoonup g6+ 34 \sightharpoonup g6+ 38 \sightharpoonup g6+ 38 \sightharpoonup g6+ 38 \sightharpoonup g6+ \sightharpoonup g6+ 38 \si
 - c) 29 ②xc4 (D) controls both e3 and e5.

However, Black wins by 29... **2**g6+30 **\$**f4 **2**f6+31 **\$**g5 **2**e5+(deflecting the knight away from the important diagonal) 32 **2**xe5 **2**e3+ 33 **\$**h4 **2**h6+34 **8**h5 g5#.



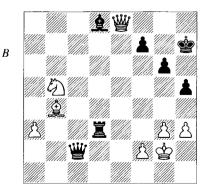
25... **国g6+ 26 曾h5 f6**

... \$\mathref{\pmathref{\pmathref{H}}}\$ is coming. Note that White does not have a piece that can cover the h6-square, despite his material advantage. 26... \$\mathref{\pmathref{\pmathref{L}}}\$ es would also work.

27 罩xe5 罩xe5+ 28 當h4 息c8! 0-1

It is mate in six more moves: 29 单d5+ 罩xd5 30 g4 罩d3 31 豐f3 罩xf3 32 公xf3 罩xg4+ 33 哈h5 (33 哈h3 罩g5+ 34 哈h4 单f2#) 33...g6+ 34 哈h6 单f8#.

When sacrificing a lot of material for a mating attack, **precise calculation is essential**. If something goes wrong and our opponent escapes, we might be left in a lost position. But do not worry; the calculations are usually simple enough due to the forcing nature of the lines.



Speelman – Peng Xiaomin Erevan Olympiad 1996

White has some threats, but precise calculations show that a forced mate can be delivered thanks to a sequence of decoys:

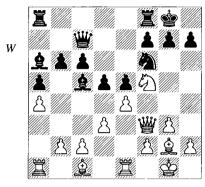
46 當h2 豐xf2+ 47 當h1 豐f3+ 48 當g1 息f2+ 49 當f1 息g3+ 50 當g1 豐f2+ 51 當h1 豐h2#. This was a fairly long line, but a forced one, so I am pretty sure that most of my readers could have worked it out for themselves.

46... 響xf2+ 47 會g5 響f5+

Or 47...f6#.

48 含h4 營f4# (0-1)

The next example illustrates a noteworthy **decoying pattern** which can be added to your armoury:

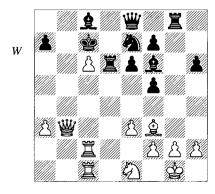


Yuldachev – Belkin Uzbekistan Ch, Tashkent 1993

15 **②**xg7! 1-0

15...曾xg7 16 息h6+ 曾xh6 17 豐xf6+ 曾h5 18 息f3#.

Decoys are based on the **potential power of our pieces**. If we do not find a direct way to make use of our pieces' latent possibilities, then we can seek to create the right preconditions by disrupting our opponent's defensive mechanisms.



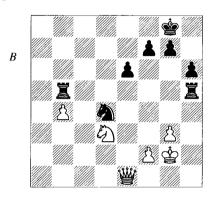
Kuporosov – Yudasin Kostroma 1985

Almost all White's pieces are optimally placed, but for the moment they attack only light squares. The pawn on c6 is the last shield of Black's king. It needs to be advanced or removed. White needs only one move to unleash the energy of his pieces:

28 **曾b8+!! 1-0**

Decoying the king onto a fatal square, and releasing the power of the pieces. There would follow 28... 全xb8 29 c7#.

Decoy can be used to place an enemy piece on a square where we can destroy it – a **mined square**:

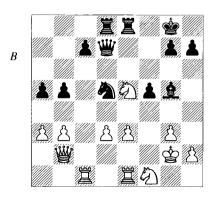


Hendriks – D. Boros Budapest 2008

We can use a knight fork to win material after decoying the king onto a mined square.

52... 国h2+! 0-1

A decoy can be used to make **material gains**. We decoy an enemy piece, and trap it:



H. Nguyen – Porat Budapest 2008

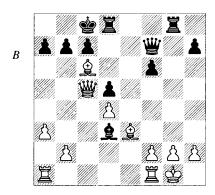
DECOY 33

26...罩xe5! 0-1

The queen is dragged to a place from which there is no return: 27 營xe5 食f6.

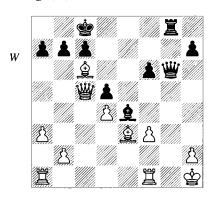
Decoy as a Defensive Method

We may also decoy a piece in order to gain an important tempo for our defence:



Klimov – Ovechkin Novokuznetsk 2008

The position is equal if Black simply recaptures on c6. Instead he thought he had found a beautiful combination:



This is the position that Black was aiming for. He obviously was counting on the line 24 国g1?? 鱼xf3+ 25 国g2 豐xg2# or 24 国f2?? 鱼xf3+! 25 国xf3 豐g2#. However, a cold shower followed:

24 **Qd7+! 曾xd7**

Otherwise White will play 25 &h3 protecting g2.

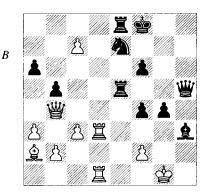
25 当b5+!

White has won a decisive tempo to drag and drop his queen back home.

25...會c8 26 響e2 **Qd3 27 響d2 Qxf1 28** 罩xf1

As a result of his superb defence, White has emerged a piece ahead and won the game later.

Here is a sophisticated case of decoy:

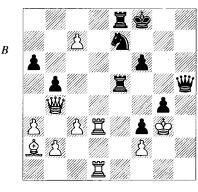


Inarkiev – Kazhgaleev Moscow 2008

Black is the first to decoy his opponent's king:

38... \(\delta g2! \) 39 \(\delta xg2 \) f3+ 40 \(\delta g3 \) (D)

40 曾gl 豐h3 is a very simple win for Black.

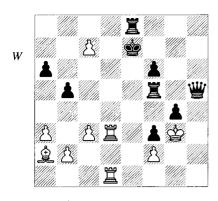


40...罩f5??

Sad but true. One suspects that time-trouble contributed to this losing move. Black could instead have delivered checkmate by force: 40... 当h3+ 41 含f4 当h2+ 42 含xg4 当g2+ 43 含f4 (43 含h4 富h5+ 44 含xh5 当g5#) 43... 宣f5+ 44 含e4 当g4+ 45 含e3 当g5+ 46 含d4 当f4#.

41 曾xe7+! 含xe7 (D)

Or 41... 黨xe7 42 c8 響+ 黨e8 43 響xe8+! and White wins material.

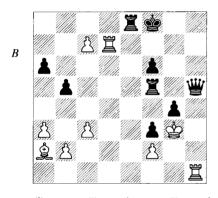


42 罩d7+ 含f8

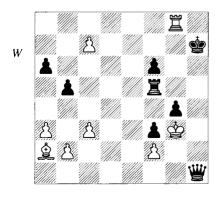
Black will be cruelly punished for letting the mate slip out of his grasp.

43 \(\bar{a}\)\hat{h1!!}\(D)

Deflection and decoy: The queen will be vulnerable on h1. 43 罩f7+ 當g8! 44 罩e7+ 當f8 45 罩f7+ is only a draw.



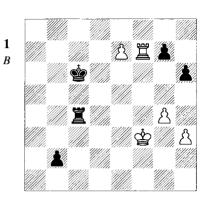
43... 營xh1 44 單f7+ 含g8 45 罩e7+ 含h8 46 罩xe8+ 含g7 47 罩g8+ 含h7 (D)



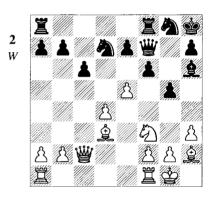
Now White needs to decoy his opponent's king onto its back rank.

48 **Zh8+! 含xh8 49 c8 + 含g7 50 98+ 1-0** Black loses his queen.

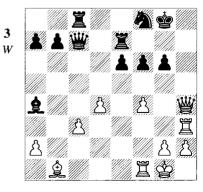
Exercises



After 48... 全d7 49 e8豐++ 全xe8 50 罩b7 罩c2 Black is obviously better, but will that be enough for a win? Or is there something better?

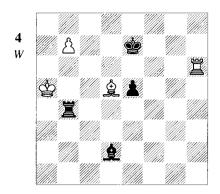


Black is very weak on his light squares. Can we use this fact to win material?

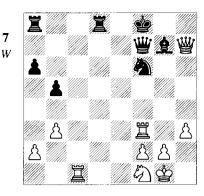


Decoy your opponent's king!

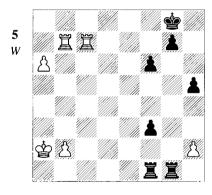
DECOY 35



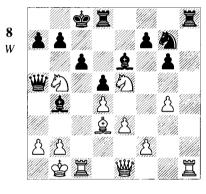
Drag out an enemy piece to promote your pawn.



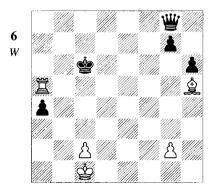
Find a way to break Black's defensive construction.



Black's rooks are cooperating perfectly; e.g., 36 a7? **2**al + 37 **3**b3 f2 -+. Can we break their synergy, and decoy a rook onto a mined square at the same time?



Try to calculate as far as you can the attack against Black's king. A hint: it is going for a walk to b3!



Chase the queen using decoys until she must surrender.

5 Double Attack

Double attack is the most common tactical method. It can be successfully applied by every chess piece, as they are all capable of attacking two targets at the same time.

Some other familiar tactical methods are specific cases of a double attack. Discovered attack is most effective when the moving piece also threatens something (and thus the discovered attack becomes a double attack). Likewise, clearance is also most effective when we perform it with gain of tempo.

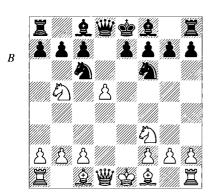
Double attacks are often employed in punishing weak opening play. Here is an example featuring **short-range pieces** at work – knights and pawns in this case, although the king is also an effective double-attacker, given the right circumstances.

Bojkov – Panbukchian Bulgarian Ch, Pleven 2005

1 e4 d5 2 exd5 豐xd5 3 公c3 豐d6 4 d4 公f6 5 公f3 公c6?!

In my opinion this move is an inaccuracy, and 5...a6 or 5...c6 is better.

6 **公b5** 營d8 7 d5 (D)



This advance is based on a double attack.

7...Db4

7... \triangle xd5?? loses due to the knight fork 8 @xd5 @xd5 9 \triangle xc7+.

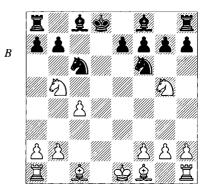
8 c4 c6

Black needs to challenge White's strong centre. In case of 8...e6 9 皇f4, simple development brings White a superior endgame: 9...②a6 10 d6 cxd6 11 ②xd6+ ②xd6 12 豐xd6 豐xd6 13 ②xd6 with two bishops and better prospects.

9 dxc6 營a5?

This is wrong in an underdeveloped position. For better or worse, Black had to liquidate to an endgame by 9...bxc6 10 營xd8+ 全xd8 11 公bd4 c5 12 a3 cxd4 13 axb4.

Note that the natural 9... \triangle xc6? is impossible, as White replies 10 \forall xd8+ \Rightarrow xd8 11 \triangle g5 (D).



Two forks are in the air (12 ②xf7+ or 12 ②c7+ in case of 11...③e8), so Black needs to proceed with 11...②e6, but then White is completely dominating: 12 ②f4 h6 13 ②xe6+ fxe6 14 0-0-0+ winning.

10 臭d2 ②e4

Black was counting on this 'counterattack', but he lacks resources to back it up. 10...bxc6 was somewhat more resilient, although after 11 a3 cxb5 12 axb4 Wc7 13 c5 (or 13 cxb5!?) White has a huge advantage.

11 \(\exists xb4\)

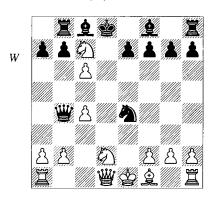
Deflecting Black's queen away from defending the c7-square. Now a fork by ②c7 will be a threat.

11... 資xb4+ 12 分d2 罩b8?

The final blunder, but Black is lost in any case: 12...含d8 13 a3 營xd2+ 14 營xd2+ ②xd2

15 0-0-0!? (15 cxb7 **\$\delta\$**xb7 16 0-0-0) 15...bxc6 16 **\$\Bar{B}\$**xd2+ **\$\delta\$**d7 17 **\$\delta\$**e2 and White wins.

13 ②c7+ 曾d8 (D)



14 2 d5 1-0

A double attack against the queen and the c7-square terminates Black's resistance. After 14...豐xd2+ 15 豐xd2 ②xd2 there is one more double attack, this time also a zwischenzug: 16 c7+.

In the previous game, the double attacks were performed by short-range pieces – knights and pawns. Long-range pieces such as the **bishop** are also highly effective for this purpose, and their double attacks may also be harder to foresee:

Bojkov – Geirnaert

Groningen 2008

1 e4 d5 2 exd5 ≝xd5 3 ②c3 ≝a5 4 d4 c6 5 ②f3 ②f6 6 &d2 ≝b6 7 ②a4 ≝d8 8 &d3 &g4

I needed a win to secure the overall tournament victory, so I had prepared a sharp line, with a small trap in it, into which my opponent fell!

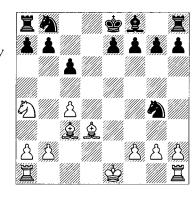
A dubious and risky decision.

10 營xf3 營xd4 11 &c3 營g4?

Black falls into the trap. After 11... at (relatively best) 12 0-0-0 White enjoys a strong initiative: all his pieces will soon join the fray, and to boot he has a huge development advantage and the bishop-pair. Still, this was the lesser evil, as after the move in the text White achieves more.

12 營xg4 ②xg4 (D)

13 Af5



A double attack: the obvious one is against the knight, and the other is against the b7-square.

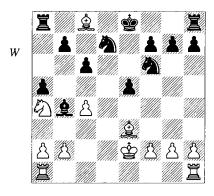
13...夕f6 14 全c8

Black can neither protect the pawn, nor move it, since he would lose a whole rook after 14...b6 15 \hfrac{1}{2}b7.

14...a5 15 &d4!

White is not in a hurry to recapture the pawn. With the help of the threat to trap the rook, White will force Black to move his knight, thus creating another double attack.

15...e5 16 &e3 &b4+ 17 &e2 ②bd7 (D) Forced.



The bishop has worked gloriously and can now collect its prey.

18 兔xb7 罩b8 19 兔xc6 \$e7 20 罩hd1 罩hc8 21 兔xd7 舂xd7 22 b3 罩c6 23 罩d5 \$e6 24 罩ad1 勺f6

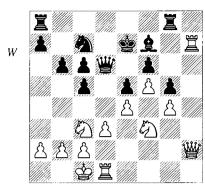
Now White's second bishop can show its worth.

25 f4! e4

Opting for a swift execution. 25...exf4 26 2xf4 is yet another double attack of sorts – the bishop is hitting the b8-rook and supporting 2e5#.

26 罩e5# (1-0)

Now let's see the rook in action.



Bojkov – Misojčić Golubac 2008

Black is trying to evacuate his king to the queenside. His possible plan is ... af8, and then to transfer his king by ... d8-c8-b7, which will leave him ultra-solid. Fortunately, I had seen a good idea in advance:

23 d4

This move opens the d-file for the dl-rook, and cuts off the black king's route to safety. The following blows are easy to foresee:

23...cxd4

23...exd4 leaves the queens facing one another, and so overloads the black king: 24 基xf7+ 含xf7 25 營xd6 nets a queen.

24 罩xd4 豐c5

Now the white rooks will work in harmony on the seventh flank. The first one is sacrificed to enable the other to triumph:

25 \(\begin{aligned} 25 \(\begin{aligned} 25 \(\begin{aligned} 25 \(\begin{aligned} 25 \(\begin{aligned} 26 \(\be

Now it is the turn of the **queen**, which has the greatest capacity of all for creating double attacks, or indeed multiple attacks. A funny case of mutual chess blindness happened in the following game:

Madan - G. Jones

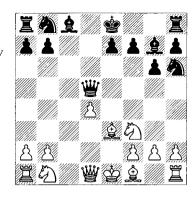
Jessie Gilbert Memorial, Coulsdon 2008

1 e4 c5 2 **②**f3 g6 3 c3 d5 4 exd5 **₩**xd5 5 d4 **Q**g7 6 **Q**e3 cxd4 7 cxd4

First Black blundered badly with...

7...4\(\text{h6??}\) (D)

But this was left unpunished by his opponent:



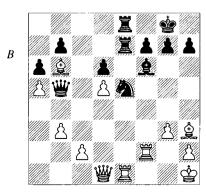
8 Dc3??

Alex Baburin wrote: "In the first game where this position occurred (Vasiukov-Razuvaev, Polanica Zdroj 1972) White played the correct 8 **©1!. Since then about 60% of all players who reached this position with White found that move. But many didn't, including some GMs. Gawain Jones joined a number of GMs who got seduced by the idea ... ©h6-f5 – Razuvaev, Ftačnik and Degraeve. I believe that Alexander Shabalov also made that mistake."

This story only shows how difficult some double attacks can be to spot, especially if they are performed from very far away. After all, here White does not even have to find a combination, but rather a simple double-attacking move. After 8... at the game ended later in a draw.

How Does it Work?

First of all we are going to demonstrate the double attack with the help of a discovered attack.



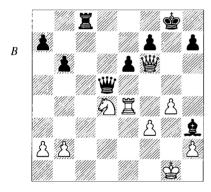
Diamant – Fier Santos 2008

Black would very much like to remove his knight from e5, unleashing the power of his rooks – better still if the knight can also threaten something at the same time, as this will give White no time to escape. However, Black needs to be precise – only one square is correct:

32... 2d3! 0-1

Attacking **both** rooks, with the point that after 33 \(\) xe7 Black has a zwischenzug that wins an exchange: 33...\(\) xf2+. The importance of the d3-square for the knight is demonstrated by the line 32...\(\) g4? 33 \(\) ff1, where White keeps everything intact (the b6-bishop is eyeing the f2-square!). After the text-move, 33 \(\) fe2 is met by 33...\(\) xe1.

A closely related idea is the **skewer**, in which two pieces are attacked along the same line. We must be very wary of **vulnerable lines** such as this.



Beliavsky – Khamrakulov Pamplona 2007

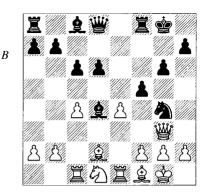
27... 對xe4! 0-1

Black clears the f-file. After 28 fxe4 he forces the white king onto this line and wins material: 28... 1+29 1+.

In the following diagram, vulnerable pieces on the same diagonal are exploited.

Black has ideas of winning the h2-pawn, but straightforward measures do not prove effective: 1... £e5 is well met by 2 f4. Therefore, he first needs to tempt the queen closer:

2 營d3 allows a double attack by 2...營h4, while after 2 營f3 營h4 3 h3 包e5 and ...f3 White's kingside collapses.



Blagojević – Čabrilo Yugoslavia 2000

2... **a**xf4! 3 **a**xf4 **a**e5

White no longer has a reply to the skewer on this diagonal. With the loss of the vital h2pawn, White's position disintegrates and his king is fatally exposed.

4 營d2

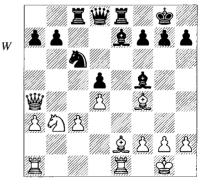
After 4 營f3 夏xh2+ 5 含h1 營h4 White cannot cover his king: 6 營h3 ②xf2+.

4... gxh2+ 5 會h1 營h4

Preparing a decisive discovered and double attack.

6 g3 皇xg3+7 堂g2 營h2+8 堂f3 ②e5+0-1 White did not wait to see the final tactic, which is a skewer: 9 堂e2 皇g4+10 堂e3 營h6+.

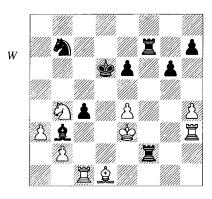
Here is an example where Black profited from the unfortunate locations of a queen and a bishop.



A. Horvath – G. Kovacs Hungarian Ch, Nyiregyhaza 2008

White blundered badly: 19 ♠c5?? ♠xc5 20 dxc5 ♣e4 0-1

Often we need to work to create a double attack. Here we see a decoy used for this purpose:



Volokitin – Kariakin Foros 2008

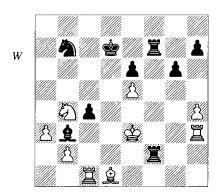
30 e5+

With this multi-purpose move, White opens a diagonal for his bishop and decoys his opponent's king into a series of decisive blows, two of them based on double attack.

30...∲d7 (D)

30... \$\displayses xe5? walks into a fork after an exchange of bishops: 31 \$\overline{x}\$xb3 cxb3 32 \$\overline{\text{\text{Q}}}\d3+.

30... ★c7 defends the b7-knight but steps into a pin, and White simply captures by 31 &xb3.

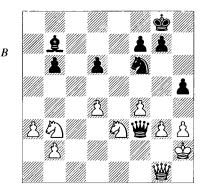


The game continuation allows a move that interferes with the black rooks' defence of one another, thus leaving the f2-rook and the b7-knight both under attack:

31 &f3 罩xb2 32 &xb7

White won material and later converted his extra knight into a full point.

In the next example, two decoy ideas are used to set up a decisive double attack:



Peredy – Bojkov Fourmies 2006

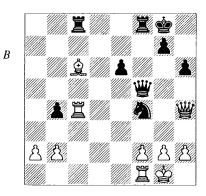
White's knights are on the same line as the black queen, but for the moment the e3-knight is firmly defended by the white queen. The fact that Black has a light-squared bishop and White is holding on the dark squares is not in my favour. So first I decoy his knight onto a light square:

32... 4 d5 33 4 xd5

And then the king:

33...曾e2+! 0-1

A double attack may be prepared by removing a vital defensive piece.



Ionesi – Murariu Predeal 2006

Here White has an excellent bishop, which suggests the idea of a destructive sacrifice:

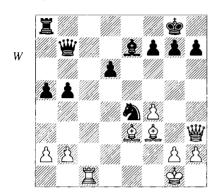
27... 基xc6! 28 基xc6

Black has not only deflected the rook from covering the e4-square, but also decoyed it to a vulnerable position.

28... **曾e4 0-1**

This is in fact a triple attack: against the king (29... 營xg2#), against the rook, and against the queen (29... ②e2+). No wonder that White decided he had seen enough.

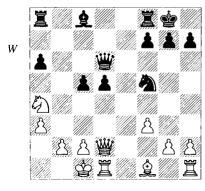
Seeking out overloaded pieces can help us find sore points in the enemy's camp, and allow us to target several pieces with double attacks.



Filipowicz – Silva Varna Olympiad 1962

After 25 \(\mathbb{Z} \)c7! 1-0 it becomes clear that the black queen had too many duties. Thanks to the double attack on the seventh rank White deflects it away from the knight. After 25...\(\mathbb{Z} \)xc7 26 \(\mathbb{Z} \)xe4 White has another double attack, this time against the rook and the king (27 \(\mathbb{Z} \)xh7+ and 28 \(\mathbb{Z} \)h8# is the second crucial threat).

In the following example both players delivered double attacks until an endgame was reached.



Grishchuk – Volokitin Russian Team Ch, Sochi 2007

16 **營xd5 營f4+**

Black was counting on this double attack to solve his problems.

17 含b1 營xa4

Another double attack, 17... ②e3, was better although even here White retains the better chances: 18 豐xa8 ②xd1 19 豐e4 豐xe4 20 fxe4 ②f2 21 罩g1 ②xe4 22 ②d3 ②d7 23 罩e1 ②xa4 24 罩xe4 ±. In the inevitable rook endgame, the white pawns should be faster.

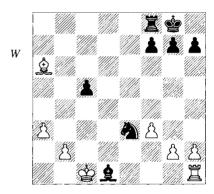
18 營xa8 ②e3 19 皇d3!?

White is ready to part with his superfluous material in order to reach a technically winning endgame.

19...全f5 20 營xa6

And not 20 幽b7?? 盒xd3 21 cxd3 幽c2+ 22 含a2夕xd1 -+.

20... \forall xa6 21 &xa6 &xc2+ 22 &c1 &xd1 (D)



For the moment it looks like Black has achieved a material advantage, but the next move clears the smoke:

After 23... \(\begin{align*} \begin{align*} & 24 \\ \begin{align*} & d2 \\ & d2 \end{align*} & with interest. \end{align*} \)

24 gxf3 分f5 25 罩e5

White has a good 罩+食 tandem.

25... 2d4 26 &c4 2e6

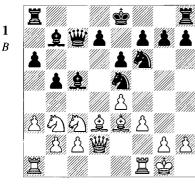
26...包xf3 27 罩f5 包d4 (27...包xh2? 28 鱼e2 traps the knight in the corner) 28 罩xc5 ±.

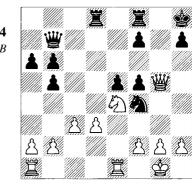
27 a4 基a8 28 b3 基a5 29 \$b2 \$f8 30 \$xe6 fxe6 31 基xe6

White wins a pawn and soon the game.

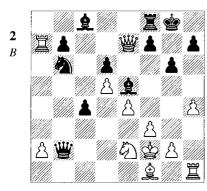
31...c4 32 \(\begin{align*} \text{act } & \

Exercises

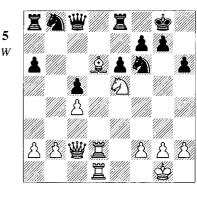




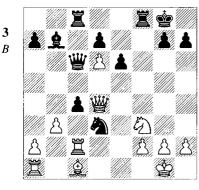
Profit from Black's open lines.



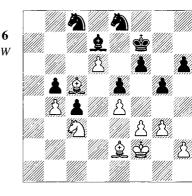
White is ahead on material, but the position of his king is worrying.



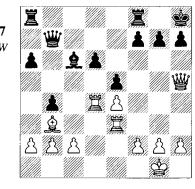
White is very active, but his opponent wants to finish his development.

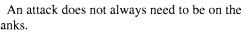


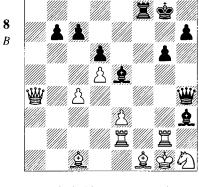
You need to spot an important detail.



Press home your passed pawn.





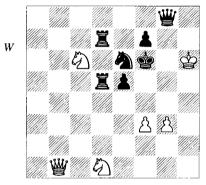


Decoy White's king to reap a rich harvest.

6 Knight Fork

The knight is considered to be the least powerful piece in chess (besides the pawn, of course). As the great world champion Jose Raul Capablanca taught us, the other minor piece, the bishop, is better in 90% of cases. However, due to its specific qualities the knight is a tremendously dangerous piece. It is nimble and its jumps can be quite shocking. That is why a double attack by a knight is usually distinguished from other double attacks and called a fork.

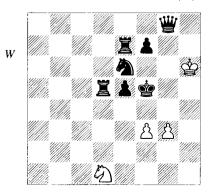
A single knight may cause incredible damage in the right circumstances:



Alb. Beliavsky
1st Prize, Korolkov-100 Jubilee, 2008

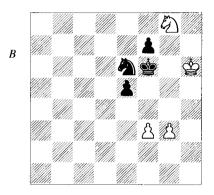
First White decoys his opponent's pieces into forks:

1 豐f5+!! 會xf5 2 包e7+!! 罩xe7 (D)



White is now a queen and two rooks down – a deficit of approximately 19 'pawns'. His only remaining piece is a knight. But a brave one...

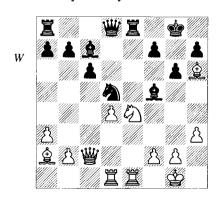
3 ②e3+ 할f6 4 ②xd5+ 할f5 5 ②xe7+ 할f6 6 ②xg8+ (D)



The knight has managed to remove most of Black's army. Now it is the king's turn to suffer:

6...\$15 7 \$\overline{9}67 + \overline{9}6 8 \overline{9}d5 + \overline{9}f5 9 g4#

Our opponent will not be very eager to walk into a fork, so we may need to force it. Deflection and decoy are very common methods:



Ligterink – Pachman Donner Memorial, Amsterdam 1994

21 @xd5 cxd5

White seems to be in an unpleasant pin, but he has fully appreciated the power of his horse.

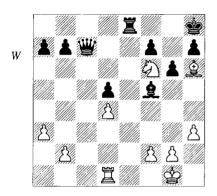
22 **曾xc7!**

Deflection from the vital f6-square.

22... **当xc7**?

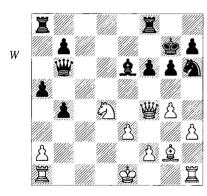
23 分f6+ \$h8 24 其xe8+ 1-0

Black realized what was coming after the forced 24... \(\tilde{\tilde{L}} \) xe8 (D):



25 \(\hat{o}g7+!!\) decoys the king to g7, after which the knight picks up a rook and a queen.

Deflection is especially effective in conjunction with decoy.



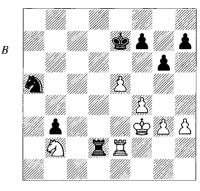
Pashikian – Ozturk Istanbul 2007

24 營c7+! 1-0

It suddenly becomes clear that Black's queen is overloaded.

A far-advanced pawn may also be bait for a piece to be forked (see following diagram):

The passed pawn on b3 is well blockaded 'à la Nimzowitsch' with a knight. However, Black can force a change of guard:



Semionova – Alexandrova Alushta (Women's Zonal) 1999

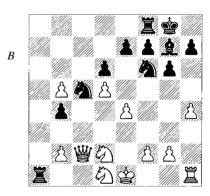
53...基xb2! 54 基xb2 公c4

The knight will usher the b-pawn through to promotion. Because of the possible fork on d2, the pawn is invulnerable.

55 萬e2 b2 56 萬e1 b1營 57 萬xb1 公d2+ 58 혛g4 公xb1 59 혛g5 公d2 60 혛h6 公e4 61 g4 公f2 62 혛xh7 公xh3 63 f5 g5 64 혛g7 公f2 65 쉏h6 公xg4+ 0-1

One last fork before the curtain falls.

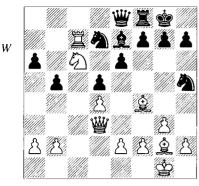
A dominant position of a rook and knight duo can even overpower a queen, as in the following group of diagrams.



Raetsky – Avrukh Biel 1996

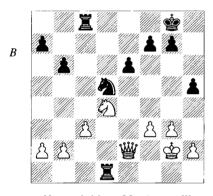
18...罩c1! 0-1

The next diagram features a similar motif, with the knight executing the fork on a slightly different square. In the second diagram overleaf, the decoy is prefaced by an exchange sacrifice.



Fedorowicz – Pieterse Ostend 1987

21 罩c8! 1-0

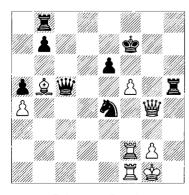


Kounalakis – Mastrovasilis European Ch, Plovdiv 2008

23... **黨xd4! 0-1**

В

24 cxd4 罩c2 25 豐xc2 包e3+ 26 當f2 包xc2 nets a knight for Black.

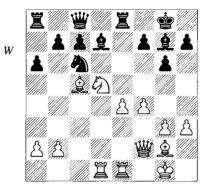


Felgaer – Peralta Argentine Ch, La Plata 2008

In this position it looks like Black is in trouble, but the tricky knight decides the game by carrying out the decoy on a totally unexpected square.

44... 響xf2+! 45 罩xf2 罩h1+!! 0-1

The forking threat may be useful in attacking weak points.



Rogozenko – Voigt 2nd Bundesliga 2006/7

Black's troops are awkwardly placed. In this case forking will give White an option to attack on c7 for free.

21 **Q**b6! **Q**xh3

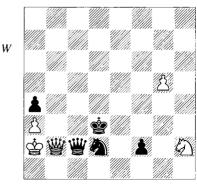
21...cxb6 22 ∅xb6 nets at least a pawn for White.

22 🖾 xc7

Another fork.

22... 2xg2 23 2xg2 1-0

We should also examine the **fork as a defensive method**:



E. Pähtz – Stefanova Reykjavik 2008

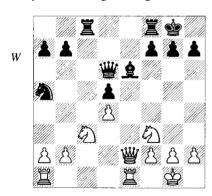
Elisabeth Pähtz could have saved a halfpoint here, if she had made the most of her tricky knight.

67 **\$a1**?

She had to exchange queens first, and advance her passed pawn as far as possible: 67 豐xc2+ \$xc2 68 g6 ②e4 69 g7 ②f6 and now 70 ②g4! is an excellent multi-purpose manoeuvre – the knight is attacking the pawn, deflecting the knight, and in fact is still controlling the f1-square due to the fork on e3! After 70...②xg4 71 g8豐 f1豐 72 豐c8+ \$d2\$ White has the choice between a simple draw with 73 豐xg4 or stalemate after 73 豐c2+\$xc2.

67... ****** 68 **②f1 ②xf1 69 ** **** xf2 **** **** c1+ 70 **** **** a2 **** **** c4+ 71 ****** a1 **②**e3 72 g6 **②**c2+ 73 ****** b2 **** **** b3+ 74 ***** c1 **** **** xa3+ 0-1

Chess-players are often advised not to play for traps. And it is a good piece of advice in those cases where the move that lays the trap does not have any other useful purpose. But if you have a chance to set a trap while furthering your constructive ideas in the position, you should do not hesitate to do so. Even if the chances that your opponent will fall into it are small, you are losing nothing.



Bojkov – Schaufelberger 2nd Bundesliga 2007/8

Black's obvious plan is to occupy the e-file with his rooks and initiate simplifications. If I want to keep my slight advantage I need to find the correct way to hinder his plans.

16 🖾 g5!

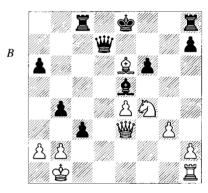
I spent quite a lot of time on this move. Little by little I realized that if he chooses the most natural reply his queen might be hanging!

16...≌ce8!

Correct! To his credit, my experienced opponent sensed or most probably saw the danger: 16... 宣fe8? 17 營h5 h6 18 宣xe6! fxe6 19 營f7+ 含h8 20 營xe8+! 宣xe8 21 包f7+ +-. My trap did not bring immediate victory, but I benefited from the fact that Black's rook abandoned the open c-file. I kept a slight edge and went on to win fairly quickly after some errors by my opponent:

17 營d3 g6 18 營b5 公c6?! 19 罩ad1 罩e7 20 營c5 營d8?! 21 罩e3 罩fe8 22 公f3 f6 23 罩de1 含f7? 24 公b5 1-0

Nisipeanu discovered that Black missed a wonderful and unexpected knight fork in the next position:



Zhadanov – Tutulan Romania 2003

What? You do not believe him? You do not see a black knight on the board? There, he will show you:

1...瞥d1+!!

Transposing with 1...c2+2 含c1 營d1+! also works.

2 罩xd1 c2+ 3 當c1 &xb2+! 4 當xb2

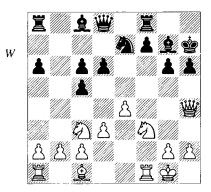
Now rather than 4...cxd1 Black plays:

4...cxd1②+!! 5 \$b3 ②xe3 and when the smoke clears, we see that Black is winning: 6 \$xc8 a5 7 \$a4 \$e7 8 \$a6 (8 \$b7 ②f1 -+) 8...\$d6 9 \$xa5 \$b8 10 \$b5 (10 \$a4 ②g4 11 \$h4 ②f2 -+) 10...\$a8+ 11 \$xb4 \$a2 12 \$h4 \$e5 13 \$c6 ②f1 -+.

Unfortunately for Black, he did not appreciate the greatness of the underpromotion and

after 1... **營c6? 2 魚xc8 營xc8 3 公d5 營c4 4 b3 營b5 5 基d1** the game became unclear.

Here is a sophisticated case of a fork:



A. Gonzalez Perez – Placencia Santa Clara 2003

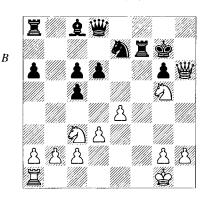
Like any other combination, a knight fork may need to be carefully prepared. We have seen various ways of achieving it, and here is one more, in which the attacker first sacrifices a bishop, then a rook, and finally a queen in order to bring his knight to the juicy squares around the enemy king and start the harvest.

15 &xh6!!

This sacrifice has the modest purpose of gaining a tempo. In the game White played the ineffective 15 ♠g5+? and went on to draw.

15... **全xh6** 16 **包g5+ 全g7** 17 **基xf7+!** Decov.

17...**罩xf7** 18 豐xh6+!! (D)



Another decoy.

18...**⊈g8**

No, thank you very much (18... \$\delta\$xh6 19 \$\Delta\$xf7+ \$\delta\$g7 20 \$\Delta\$xd8 +−).

19 營h8+!!

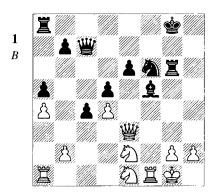
The gift must nevertheless be accepted.

19...曾xh8 20 公xf7+ 曾g8 21 公xd8

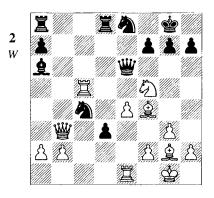
White emerges two pawns up. His knight is in danger, but with a few subtle moves and a pawn he manages to retreat it back home.

White has a winning position.

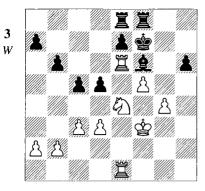
Exercises



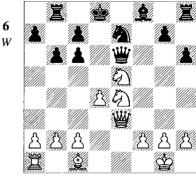
Chop off a pawn.



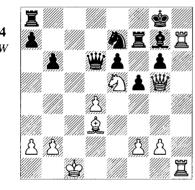
White has very active pieces. Make use of them.



Does White need to retreat the knight?



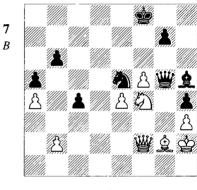
Nigel Short missed a winning move here. Can you find it?



Do you recognize the pattern?

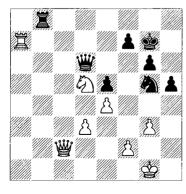
5

В

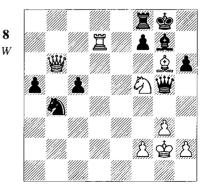


Which is true? 49...包f3+ is:

- A) good for Black and gives him winning chances.
 - B) a blunder and loses the game.



Bring your pieces into the attack and win material.



Use as many forces as you can to crack the f7-square.

7 Discovered Attack

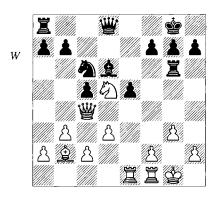
A discovered attack occurs when a piece moves, unmasking an attack from a piece that stands behind it. Obviously the attacking piece must be a long-range line-moving piece (bishop, rook or queen).

When the discovered attack is against the king, this is a special case that is called a discovered check. If the piece that moves also gives check, then we have a double check - a very dangerous situation for the king since his only defence in that case is to flee as it is impossible to block both checks simultaneously or to capture both checking pieces.

A famous attacking mechanism called the see-saw (or the windmill) is based on repeated discovered checks. These make it possible to capture several pieces because the opponent is busy moving his king out of check.

Gelashvili – Gagunashvili Batumi 2001

1 e4 c5 2 b3 d6 3 2 b2 2 f6 4 2 b5+ 2 d7 5 2 xd7+ 2 bxd7 6 d3 e5 7 2 e2 d5 8 exd5 2 xd5 9 0-0 2 e7 10 2 bc3 2 xc3 11 2 xc3 0-0 12 2 d5 2 d6 13 2 f3 2 e8 14 2 ae1 2 e6 15 g3 2 b8 16 2 g4 2 g6 17 2 c6 2

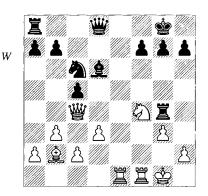


18 f4!

Black's opening play has been none too impressive, as White has been able to occupy excellent positions with his pieces. He now opens

a file for his second rook, the only piece that was not yet playing an active role. With all his troops involved in the attack, it is no wonder that Black's position soon collapses.

18...exf4 19 ②xf4 罩g4? (D)



A blunder in a bad position. Curiously the rook is vulnerable on g4.

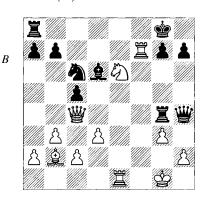
20 ②e6!!

The first discovered attack. Both Black's rook and queen are hanging.

20...**營h4!**

Black finds a clever way to prolong the struggle. 20... \(\mathbb{Z}\) xc4 21 \(\mathbb{Z}\) xd8 \(\mathbb{Z}\) xc2 22 \(\mathbb{Z}\) e8+ \(\mathbb{L}\) f8 23 \(\mathbb{Z}\) xf7 would lead to immediate mate.

21 罩xf7!! (D)



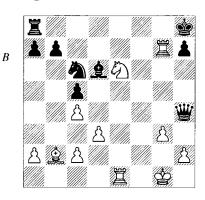
White is breaking in. He now opens all the lines towards the black king and sets up a variety of discovered attacks.

21...罩xc4

In case of 21... 含xf7 White uses the double check idea to decoy Black's king out into the open. You have already seen several examples of the type of king-hunt that then ensues: 22 ②d8++ 含g6 (22... 含f8 23 營f7#) 23 營f7+ 含h6 24 基e6+ 基g6 25 ②xg7+ (25 基xg6+ also leads to forced mate after 25...hxg6 26 營xg7+ 含h5 27 營h7+ 含g4 28 營xh4+ 含f5 29 營h3+ 含g5 30 營e6) 25... 含h5 26 營f5+ 營g5 (26... 基g5 27 基h6#) 27 營h3+ 營h4 28 營xh4#.

A counterattack by 21... 黨xg3+ does not suffice since after 22 hxg3 豐xg3+ 23 曾f1 Black needs to step into a double check again: 23... 會xf7 (23... 豐h3+ 24 會e2 豐h5+ 25 罩f3 leaves White a rook ahead) 24 ②d8++ and after this White's task is pure pleasure: 24... 會g6 25 豐f7+ 會g5 (25... 會h6 26 會c1+ g5 27 罩e6#) 26 ②e6+ 會h4 27 罩e4+ and mate is coming soon.

21... 皇 xg3 also gives White time to wrap up the game in style: 22 量 xg7+ 量 xg7 (22... 會 h 8 leads to another double check and then mate: 23 置 g8++ 會 xg8 24 ② d8+ 置 xc4 25 置 e8#) 23 ② d8+ 會 f8 (23... 響 xc4 24 置 e8#) 24 皇 xg7+ 會 xg7 25 營 f7+ 會 h 6 26 置 e6+ and White wins.



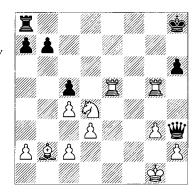
White is not in a hurry. He is creating a seesaw against which Black is helpless.

23...豐h3 24 罩g5+ 公d4

25 ∮\xd4 \ \ e5

25...cxd4 26 &xd4+ &e5 27 &xe5#.

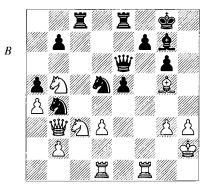
26 \(\text{\text{Z}}\) exe5 h6 (D)



The mechanism is working, and Black resigned rather than see all his pieces disappear after 29... 會 8 30 罩xb7+ 會 8 31 罩g7+ 會 8 32 罩xa7+ 會 8 33 罩xa8+ 會 f 7 34 ②xg5+.

Various features can help us detect when a discovered attack is effective:

- 1) The piece that we attack is undefended.
- 2) Our attacking piece is supported by our pieces.
- 3) The moving piece also attacks something (thus a discovered attack becomes a double attack).



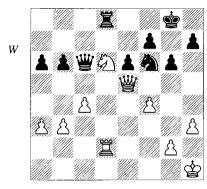
Wirthensohn - Nemet Swiss open Ch, Lucerne 1994

Here all three features apply.

22...@e3! 0-1

White threw in the towel because:

- 1) White's queen is under attack and is undefended.
- 2) Black's queen supported by both the rook and the pawn.
- 3) The knight that has moved to e3 attacks a rook, and wins it thanks to a zwischenzug: 23 豐xe6 ②xf1+24 罩xf1 罩xe6.



Tiviakov – Langrock European Union Ch, Liverpool 2008

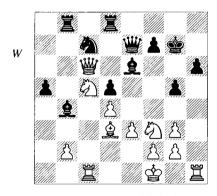
Hint 2 does not matter if the attacked piece is of higher value:

36 公f5! 營e8

The discovered piece is not protected, but if 36... \(\tilde{\tilde{\tilde{2}}}\) xd2 the moved knight wins a whole queen with 37 \(\tilde{\tilde{2}}\) e7+.

37 學xf6 罩xd2 38 學g7# (1-0)

Various tactical methods can help us successfully apply the double attack.



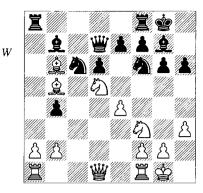
Riazantsev – Maletin Moscow 2008

White has a mechanism for a discovered attack (such a mechanism is known as a 'battery'), namely the c1-rook and the c5-knight. But if he continues with 25 ②xe6+ to win the knight on c7, the latter can recapture on e6 and thus sidestep the attack. White needs more stable prey on c7. A decoy will help prepare the attack:

25 **営xc7! 1-0**

25... 響xc7 26 ②xe6+ fxe6 27 罩xc7+.

Deflection can also lay the groundwork for a discovered attack:

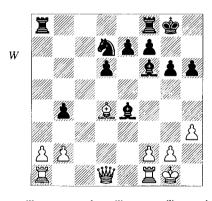


Amonatov – Zemtsov Moscow 2008

At first glance it is hard to foresee how White can make good use of a discovered attack. However, he finds a way to deflect the d6-pawn and open the d-file. The idea of a knight fork adds the final ingredient to the combination.

17 De5! Dxe5

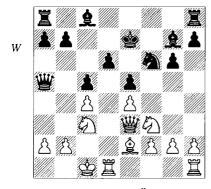
17...dxe5 18 ②xf6+ ②xf6 19 營xd7; 17...營e8 18 ②xc6 ②xc6 19 ②xc6 營xc6 20 ②xe7+.



21 罩e1 e5 22 兔e3 罩fd8 23 豐xd6 兔c2 24 豐xb4 e4 25 兔d4 勺e5 26 兔xe5 兔xe5 27 豐c5 1-0

We have already seen some examples in which a battery (a mechanism for a discovered attack) already existed and the attacker was simply trying to find the best way to make use of it. Now we shall see how such a mechanism can be created in the cut-and-thrust of a sharp

battle, without giving the opponent any respite to escape.



Korchnoi – Šolak Basle 2002

First White decoys Black's king into a check.

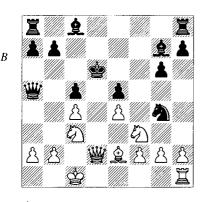
15 **\(\beta\)**xd6!! **\(\Delta\)**g4

16 **曾g5**+

White insists.

16...**⊈xd**6

17 **曾d2+**(D)



17...**∲e6**

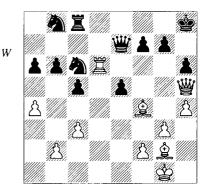
17...當c6 18 營d5+當c7 19 包b5+ and Black has to surrender his queen in any case.

18 **②g5+ \$f6**

Black decided to cut short his agony. 18... 含e7 19 ②d5+.

19 **②d5#** (1-0)

When you construct a mechanism for a discovered attack and your opponent is tied up and can hardly move, always try to find the best way to collect your bonuses.



Glek – ZapataSanto Domingo (blitz) 2002

White creates the battery with a rook sacrifice:

1 罩xh6+! gxh6 2 皇xh6 豐e6

The alternative defence 2...f6 also fails after the calm 3 鱼e4!, which takes control over the vital h7-square and thus prevents Black's queen from covering its king: 3...曾d7 4 鱼f5 (4 鱼g5+, as given by Glek, wins as well) 4...曾e8 5 鱼g6 曾d7 6 鱼g5+ 鱼g8 7 鱼xf6 and Black is getting mated.

Now care is needed:

3 **≜e4!**

White is in no hurry. Black's king can't go anywhere, and the discovered check can wait until more reserves have been brought up, and it will be more effective.

3...�e7

4 **皇g5**+

White has a quicker forced mate by 4 皇f8+ 曾g8 5 皇xe7 豐xe7 6 豐h7+ 曾f8 7 豐h8#.

- 4...**ġ**g7 5 **≜**xe7
- 5 營h7+ 含f8 6 息f5 +-.

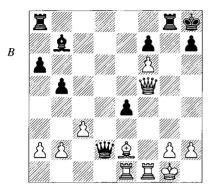
5... **營xe7**

5...f5 6 & xf5 豐xe7 7 豐g6+ 含f8 8 & xc8 +-.

6 營h7+! 含f6

6...**含**f8 7 **肾**h8#. **7 肾h6# (1-0)**

When the attacker controls all the vital lines, material tends to be a secondary factor:



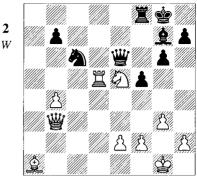
A. Gonzalez – Espinosa Cuba 2004

Black consistently clears the g-file and the long diagonal.

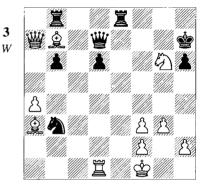
3...e3+ 4 皇f3

Now Black creates a deadly mating mechanism based on a discovered check:

4...曾g2+!! 0-1

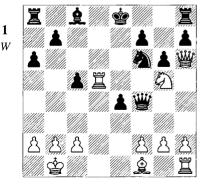


Unleash the power of your pieces!

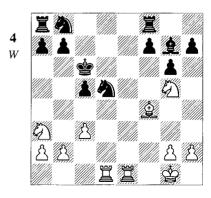


The position is teeming with possible discovered attacks, but what is the best way forward?

Exercises

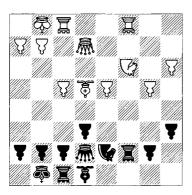


White already has a battery set up, so you need only find the best way to use it.



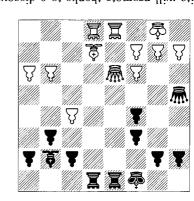
Everything is forced, isn't it?

M

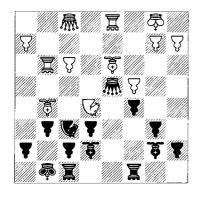


Discover a discovery.

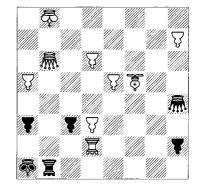
М 8



White will promote thanks to a discovered attack. Do you see how?



White is ready to start a decisive attack.



9

M S

White loses his queen and the game. Or does

8 Clearance

In 1958 at the Olympiad in Munich, young Mikhail Tal was approached by the world champion Mikhail Botvinnik. "Why did you sacrifice a pawn?" asked the champion. The reply: "It was getting in my way."

Sometimes one of our pieces is standing in the way of a more important one. But spending time moving the poorly-placed piece might give the opponent time to organize his defences. That is why we may instead seek to sacrifice the piece (or a pawn) to clear an important line or square without losing any time – or, even better, with a gain of time.

Nestorović – Popchev Stara Pazova 2008

1 e4 g6 2 d4 皇g7 3 ②c3 ②c6 4 皇e3 d5!? 5 ②f3 dxe4 6 ②xe4 ②h6?! 7 d5! ②b4 8 빨d2!

A double attack.

8...a5 9 a3?

Black has not played the opening well, and White could have taken full advantage by 9 兔xh6 兔xh6 10 營xh6 ②xc2+ 11 含d2; e.g., 11....兔f5 12 兔c4 兔xe4 13 營g7 罩f8 14 ②g5 ± with the point that 14...兔xd5 15 含xc2! 兔xc4? loses to 16 罩ad1 +-.

9... **曾xd5!** 10 axb4

10... 曾xe4 11 &d3 曾e6 12 0-0-0?

This is also a double attack. White is threatening 13 鱼b5+, followed by mate on d8, so the h6-knight is lost. However tempting this idea may be, it is wrong. Correct is 12 0-0 全f5 13 鱼xf5 豐xf5 14 鱼d4, with approximate equality.

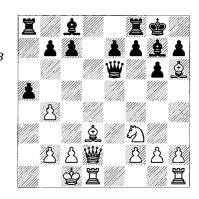
12...0-0! 13 **Qxh6** (D)

13...axb4!

Line clearance. Black has given up a piece, but creates an attack on the open a-file.

14 **營e3**

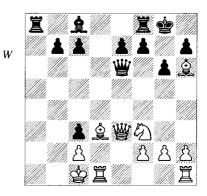
Anything else loses (for example, 14 \(\subseteq xb4? \) \(\delta xh6+ \)). The queen must leave the d2-square while protecting the bishop.



14....**皇c**3!

Obstruction! This prevents the escape of the white king by 15 \(\delta \delta 2 \).

15 bxc3 bxc3 (D)



Mate looks inevitable now. But White had foreseen the idea:

16 **Qa6!**

The best defence: White employs clearance and obstruction for defensive purposes. Now the queen can remove the vital c3-pawn.

16... **營xe3+!**

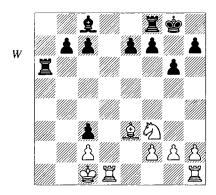
Not 16... 基xa6?? 17 營xc3.

17 \(\text{xe} \) xe3?!

More resilient was 17 fxe3 基xa6 18 \$b1 基e8! (Black is at most slightly better after 18...基b6+ 19 \$c1 \$e6 20 \$xf8 \$a2 21 2d2 cxd2+ 22 \$xd2 \$xf8), as analysed by Golubev:

- b) Also not helpful is 19 🖸 d4 🚊 e6 20 🗹 b3 Zea8 followed by ...c5-c4.
- c) 19 \(\frac{1}{2} \) \(\frac{1} \) \(\frac{1}{2} \) \(\frac{1}{2} \) \(\frac{

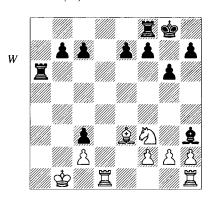
17... Ξ xa6 (\hat{D})



18 **ģ**b1

It looks like Black's attack has run out of steam. White has exchanged most of the pieces, including the queens, and now the white king has covered his main weakness. However...

18....**食h3!** (D) -+

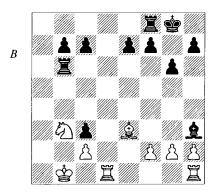


The third clearance of a line. Note that Black does it with the gain of a tempo! Now 19... If a8 is the main threat, but the double attack by 19... 2xg2 must also be taken into account.

19 4 d4

Or 19 gxh3 Ξ fa8 20 Ξ d8+ (deflection) 20... Ξ xd8 21 \triangle d4 c5 22 \triangle b3 c4 with a decisive doubling of the rooks on the a-file.

19...罩b6+ 20 包b3 (D)



Now comes the last clearance – this time of a diagonal.

20... **三xb3+!! 21 exb3 全f5+ 22 全c1** 22 **全a**2 **三a8+ 23 全a7 三xa7#**.

22... 罩a8 0-1

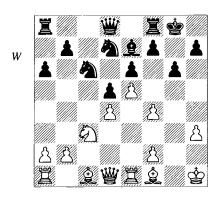
After 23 \(\bar{2}\)d8+\(\bar{2}\)xd8 the black rook will return to a8.

In the following friendly blitz game I managed to perform all the ideas of a clearance:

Bojkov – Ermenkov

Sofia (blitz) 2002

1 e4 c5 2 🖾 f3 d6 3 & b5+ 🖾 c6 4 0-0 & d7 5 Ãe1 🖄 f6 6 c3 a6 7 & f1 & g4 8 d4 cxd4 9 cxd4 d5 10 e5 🖾 d7 11 h3 & xf3 12 gxf3 e6 13 🖾 c3 & e7 14 f4 g6 15 & h1 0-0 (D)

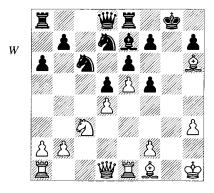


Objectively, White's position is dubious. Seeking counterplay, I clear the diagonal for

my dark-squared bishop and establish a base near his king.

16 f5 gxf5 17 皇h6 星e8? (D)

17...當h8! is a good exchange sacrifice; after 18 & xf8 & xf8 White's pawns are rather weak.

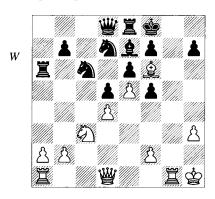


18 \(\mathbb{L} \) xa6!

Clearing a line for my rook, while also grabbing a pawn, and threatening to take a second one with yet another double attack.

18... 基xa6 19 基g1+ 含h8

Before the final blow I improve the position of the bishop.



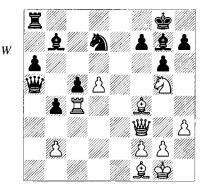
And finally comes a cleaning of a square for my most powerful piece.

22 \(\mathbb{Z}\)g8+! 1-0

22...會xg8 23 營g1+ 會f8 24 營g7#.

Usually a clearance aims to make way for our major pieces. This is logical, since their power is more significant, and more likely to be sufficient to justify a material sacrifice.

In the following diagram, the bishop on f4 is not only hindering the queen's road to f7, but it prevents the white rook from taking part in the



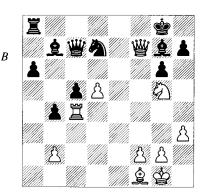
P. Cramling – Franco Seville 1988

attack. So the bishop must vacate its post, preferably with tempo!

23 \&c7!

This is not only clearance, but also a decoy. If our logical analysis enables us to spot this move, then we will surely foresee the next two.

23... 響xc7 24 響xf7+ (D)



The first acquisition.

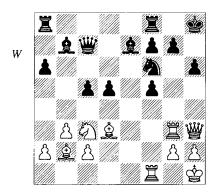
24...當h8 25 罩h4 1-0

The second, and decisive achievement – the rook is free to attack. Now we can fully appreciate the importance of 23 \(\overline{a}c7 - Black lacks the 25...\(\overline{a}f6/f8\) resource. After 25 \(\overline{a}f4\) Black can only move the h-pawn:

- a) 25...h5 26 營xg6 (practical advice: when you calculated the position in advance, it would be enough to stop your calculations here: for the piece White wins three pawns and creates a strong attack) 26...包f8 27 營xh5+ 營g8 and now comes another clearance of a diagonal: 28 d6 營d7 29 全c4+.
- b) 25...h6 26 罩xh6+. This time the deflection assists the queen: 26.... xh6 27 豐h7#.

CLEARANCE 59

In the next example, we see a key diagonal being cleared, and this has a decisive impact on the position:

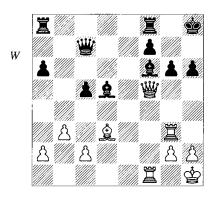


Arencibia – Zapata Merida 2007

Most of White's pieces are pointing at his opponent's king. However, he still needs to bring up some reinforcements before he can successfully break through. Two pieces are not involved into the assault, and we must take care of them.

20 ②xd5!

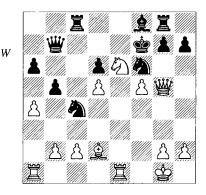
Clearing the long diagonal for the bishop. The fact that White will lose the knight is not that important since he will gain a great deal of attacking power.



23 **營xf6+ 1-0**

Black resigned in view of the line-clearances that will inevitably come: 23... 查g8 24 鱼xg6 fxg6 25 罩xg6+ 查h7 26 罩xh6+ 查g8 27 罩h8# or 23... 查h7 24 鱼xg6+ fxg6 25 營xg6+ 查h8 26 營xh6+ 營h7 27 冨xf8+ 冨xf8 28 營xf8+ 鱼g8 29 營f6+ 徵g7 30 營xg7#.

Sometimes it is worth a large material sacrifice just to clear a single square. If your opponent's king is obstructed by his own pieces, you must take a closer look at your pieces — any check might possibly be mate. Knights can be especially effective in such situations.



Gongora – Blanco Cuba 2004

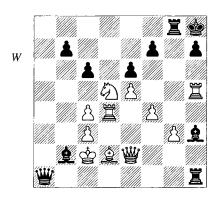
White's knight could potentially deliver mate from two squares: d8 and g5. However, d8 is well protected by the rook, and g5 is occupied by his queen. But this square can be cleared with gain of tempo:

1 曾g6+!! 含e7

1...hxg6 2 ②g5#.

2 營f7+!! 1-0

Here is an example with multiple clearance sacrifices:



Corrales – Ferragut Cuba 2004

White first of all clears a square for his queen:

1 基xh7+! 當xh7 2 營h5+ 當g7

But now he parts with his most powerful piece:

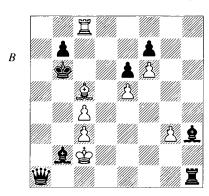
3 營h6+!! 含xh6 4 f5+

The point is that with this move he manages to open a diagonal for his bishop, the fourth rank for his rook, and last, but not least, the modest pawn on f5 will play a decisive part in the black king's execution.

4...**ℤ**g5

White also wins after 4... \$\\$g7 5 f6+ \$\\$f8 6 \$\\$h6+ \$\\$g7 7 fxg7++- or 4... \$\\$h7 5 \$\\$h4+ \$\\$g7 6 \$\\$h6++-.

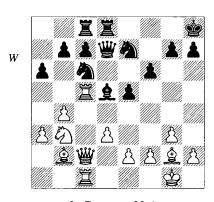
5 單h4+ 當g7 6 f6+ 當f8 7 單h8+ 單g8 8 魚h6+ 當e8 9 罩xg8+ 當d7 10 ②b6+ 當c7 11 罩c8+ 當xb6 12 魚e3+ c5 13 兔xc5+ (D)



1-0

And mate from a8. A magnificent piece of art!

But the aim is not always to give a spectacular mate. Here we see clearance ideas leading to material gains:



A. Byron – Motzer Porto Mannu 2008

White's knight would be only too happy to occupy the c5-square. Unfortunately the rook stands there, and does not have any good retreat-squares. So what else might it do?

22 **罩xd5!!**

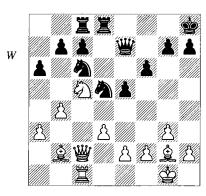
This is both a clearance and a decoy.

22...②xd5 23 ②c5

The knight arrives on its cherished square and creates a double attack. Black loses his base on b7 and will have to shed material because this will leave the c6-knight unprotected.

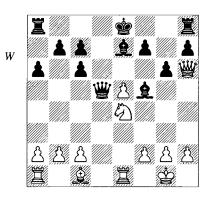
23.... **曾e7** (D)

23... 曾d6 24 包xb7 +-.



24 ②xb7 +- ②d4 25 &xd4 exd4 26 ②xd8 豐xd8 27 &xd5 豐xd5 28 豐c6 豐b5 29 藁c5 1-0

The next example features a sophisticated case of clearance.



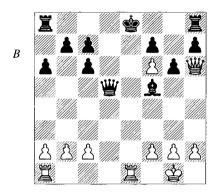
L. Vajda – Ki. Georgiev Montenegro Team Ch, Herceg Novi 2008

After 16 ②f6+? 鱼xf6 17 exf6+ 鱼e6 White is unable to prevent ...0-0-0. If 18 c4 then Black has, at least, 18... 豐d3!?, unafraid of 19 蓋xe6+?! fxe6 (Golubev). Instead Vajda finds an elegant

way to bring a key additional unit into the assault:

16 **£g5! £xg5**

17 4 f6+!! &xf6 18 exf6+ (D)



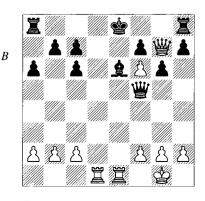
As Golubev points out, it turns out that without the bishop on c1, the evaluation of this position radically changes in White's favour. White has invested a bishop to gain just one tempo – but this tempo is used to bring a rook into play quickly enough to catch the enemy king in the centre. And that proves to be worth its weight in gold.

The point. White occupies the central files and prevents his opponent from castling and connecting his rooks.

19...ッf5

If Black immediately gives his queen away by 19...0-0-0 20 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xd5, he is unlikely to survive.

20 **曾g7!** (D)



But now the black forces are simply paralysed. He never can move the queen to c5 (preparing ... 三d8) because of 三xe6+ and 營d7#. White's task is to prepare f4 and 三e5.

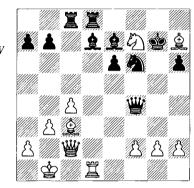
21 h3 h5 22 \(\bar{2}\)d4 h4

Otherwise 23 g4 wins.

23 f4!

Black will inevitably lose his queen after **\(\) \(\) \(\)** and White soon won.

The next example is even more impressive – or it would have been if the correct sequence had actually been played.



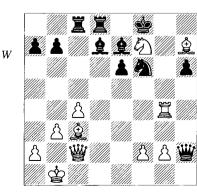
Chan Weng Chee – Ly Hong Nguyen Singapore 2005

White could have created a piece of fine chessboard art with a series of sacrifices based on clearance ideas:

1 罩d4!

Chasing away the queen, and bringing the rook into the attack. The game saw 1 当g6+?? and later Black won.

1... 響xh2 2 罩g4+ 會f8 (D)



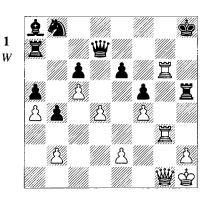
And now the fireworks begin:

3 \(\mathbb{Z}\)g8+!!

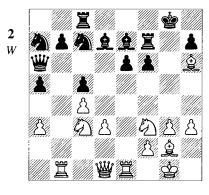
Not 3 豐g6?? 豐g1+ 4 堂c2 豐xf2+ -+.

3...①xg8 4 皇g7+!! 當e8 5 ②d6+! 皇xd6 6 豐g6+ 當e7 7 皇f6+! ②xf6 8 豐g7+ 當e8 9 皇g6#

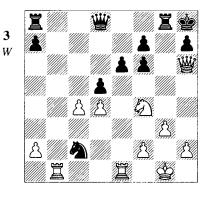
Exercises



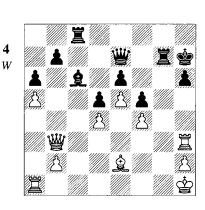
Find a way to use your most powerful piece.



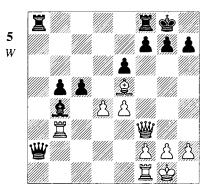
Clear a diagonal.



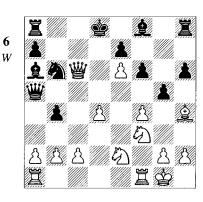
Rooks adore the seventh rank.



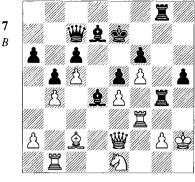
Combine clearance with decoy!

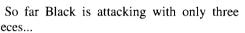


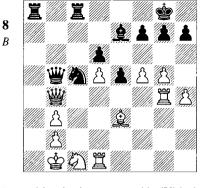
Like a bolt from the blue came...



Black's king has stayed too long in the centre. Find a way to attack it.







Everything looks protected in White's camp. But that could change if lines are opened...

9 Obstruction

The term 'obstruction' covers a variety of situations where we seek to benefit from our opponent's pieces being blocked in their movement by other pieces, whether they be our pieces or the opponent's own pieces. For example, a blockade of a passed or isolated pawn is a simple way to lessen the power of this pawn by preventing it from advancing. The fact that it is fixed in place also makes it easier if we wish to attack this pawn. Furthermore, the opponent's pieces may in turn be restricted in their movement by their own pawn; indeed, this is a factor that should be taken into account when we decide on which square to blockade such a pawn.

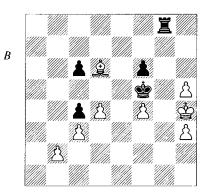
But this is a book about tactics, and here our main focus is on more drastic cases of obstruction. If it is the enemy king that is obstructed, then this can play a vital role in our efforts to checkmate him, while obstruction also comes into play when trapping other pieces, or in preventing them from playing a useful role in the defence of their king or in counterattacking our own sensitive spots.

In most positions it is a good idea to have plenty of pieces around the king, to provide him with a secure defence against the many types of tactical blows that we have seen in other chapters of this book. In many of the following examples we shall see the darker side of 'defence in numbers' as these pieces can turn out to hamper the king if his best policy is to flee to another part of the battlefield.

We start off with a deceptive endgame position where obstruction plays a key role (*see following position*).

43...**曾e**6!!

This cunning move is the prelude to a wonderful blocking idea. During the game, everybody (including the online commentators, Alexei Shirov himself and even the mighty engines) was sure that 44 h6 \$\display\$xd6 45 \$\display\$h5 would now lead to a forced draw. Everyone but Levon Aronian, that is.



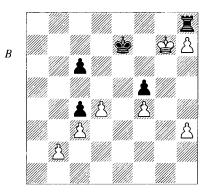
Shirov – Aronian Tal Memorial, Moscow 2006

44 h6

44 &c5 gives White some chances to save the game.

Obviously Shirov was counting on 47... ± 8 $48 \div g7$ $\pm 67 + 49 \div g6$ $\pm 68 = ...$

48 \$\delta\$g7 (D)



48...**\$e8!!**

The point. This type of idea has been seen in endgame studies but is very rare in over-the-board contests. If White now takes the rook, then Black plays ... \$\frac{1}{2}f7\$ or ... \$\frac{1}{2}f8\$ and waits until White runs out of pawn moves. In the end White will have no choice but to play b3 – Black will capture this pawn and at the same

time free its colleague on c3 (thus ruling out stalemate). Then he will promote his pawn and mate the white king in the corner.

Thus White cannot take the h8-rook, but Black is able to free himself and win:

49 \$g6 \$f8 50 h4 \$e7 51 \$g7 \$e8! 52 \$g6 \$f8 53 h5 \$e7 54 \$g7 \$e8 55 \$g6 \$f8 56 h6 \$e8 57 \$f6

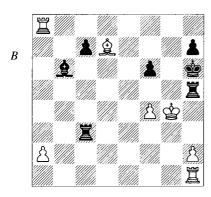
Or 57 當g7 當e7 58 當g6 當f8.

57... 基xh7 58 含g6 基f7! 0-1

If 59 h7 then Black repeats the manoeuvre: 59... 볼 f8! 60 할 g7 볼 h8! 61 할 xh8 할 f7.

This was a case of a long-term blockade in order to exclude White's king from the game.

If you see that you have a chance for a mating attack but your opponent's king always escapes via a certain square, you should seek ways to block his access to it. As we have already noted, his own pieces may do a perfect job on your behalf.



Epstein – Tuvshintugs USA Women's Ch. Tulsa 2008

Black first creates a mating-net by coordinating her rooks.

36... 基ch3! 37 星f8

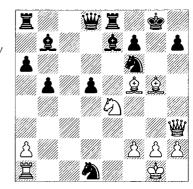
Now 37... \$\begin{align*} \text{35h4+} allows the white king to slip away via the third rank, while 37... \$\begin{align*} \text{55h4+} provides the f5-square. But this square can be blocked!

37...f5 + 0-1

No matter with which piece White captures, there follows 38...\(\begin{align*} \begin{align*} 5544#. \end{align*}

We can cover the emergency exits using our pieces too (*see following diagram*):

21 營h6!

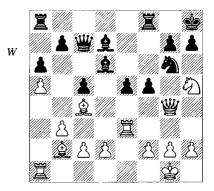


Kriakvin – Kuligin Russian Team Ch, Dagomys 2008

This move takes away the f8-square from the king and prepares a typical mating mechanism:

21... \(\tilde{\pi} \) c8 22 \(\bar{\phi} \) xf6+ \(\tilde{\pi} \) xf6 23 \(\tilde{\pi} \) xh7+ 1-0

The next two examples feature the blocking of lines. In this way we can prevent potential defenders from frustrating our plans by denying them access to the lines they need.



Varavin – Nizamov Russia 2001

White first deflects an important pawn to open up the black king:

1 營xg6! hxg6

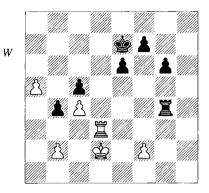
Now he will move his knight to clear the hfile for his rook. But he must be very precise in his choice of square in order to deny Black the chance to control the critical h3-square.

2 9 f4!

The key move in the combination, blocking the vital c8-h3 diagonal. Mate is inevitable.

2...\$e6 3 \$xe6 1-0

Here is an example of line-blocking in a study by a world champion.

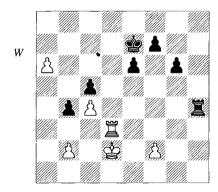


A. Alekhine Tijdschrift v.d. KNSB, 1933

White needs to exclude his opponent's rook if he wishes to promote his a-pawn. He manages to do so both on the vertical, and on the horizontal:

1 a6 罩h4 (D)

After 1... Igl 2 a7 Ia1, 3 Ia3! blocks the rook and 3... bxa3 4 a8 waxb2 5 wb7+ is the end.



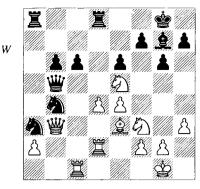
2 罩d8! 含xd8

The king has no choice but to block the back rank, with the result that the black rook cannot prevent the a-pawn from slipping through:

3 a7

White wins.

The most remarkable case of obstruction is the **smothered mate**.

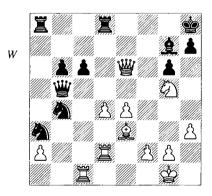


R. Simić – Roeschlau Schöneck 1988

White noticed the weaknesses in Black's camp and exploited them immediately:

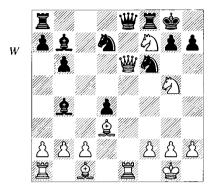
26 @xf7! 罩e8

Black declines the sacrifice, but this loses with little more than a murmur. Obviously he saw the more entertaining line that was in store for him if he accepted the offer: 26...含xf7 27 ②g5+ 含g8 (27...含f8 loses prosaically: 28 徵xe6 罩a7 29 ②xh7#) 28 徵xe6+ 含h8 (D).



Now White can give mate with the standard smothered mate mechanism, but let's go over it in a little detail. First White improves the position of his knight by 29 \$\overline{9}f7+\$ (after the immediate 29 \$\overline{9}g8+?? Black is not obliged to take back with the rook!) 29...\$\overline{9}g8 30 \$\overline{0}h6++\$ (the double check is an essential ingredient, as the knight now covers g8) 30...\$\overline{9}h8. Now White decoys a piece to g8 to block its king: 31 \$\overline{9}g8+! \$\overline{2}xg8\$ (now the king cannot make the capture) and finally delivers the smothered mate: 32 \$\overline{0}f7#.

Here is a more sophisticated example, with the use of two knights:



Smirin – Ribeiro Las Palmas 1997

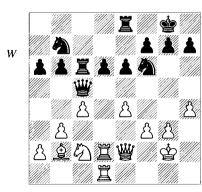
16 总xh7+!

This is an important intermezzo, which deflects the black knight from the defence of the g8-square. 16 公h6++ \$h8 17 豐g8+?? can be met by 17...公xg8.

1-0

After 16... \triangle xh7 17 \triangle h6++ \Leftrightarrow h8 18 $\ensuremath{\mbox{$raw{$}\mbox{$\'e$}}}$ 8lack can only capture with the rook, leaving the f7-square ripe for invasion: 18... $\ensuremath{\mbox{$\mbox{$}\mbo$

We may sacrifice material in order to block an important square or line which an enemy piece needs. In the next example, the sacrificed material is recouped with substantial interest.



Reinderman – Ushenina Wijk aan Zee 2008

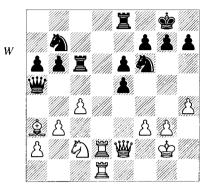
Black's queen looks vulnerable in front of its pawn-chain. However, a direct attack fails

because the queen finds sanctuary on the kingside. But the emergency exit can be shut off:

28 e5!

The most refined approach. 28 \(\overline{x}\)xf6?! is another way of winning the queen, but Black earns two rooks for it: 28...gxf6 29 \(\overline{a}\)d5 exd5 30 \(\overline{a}\)xd5 \(\overline{a}\).

28...dxe5 29 **Qa3 Ya5** (D)

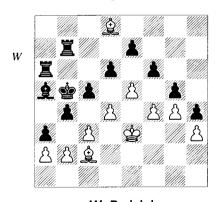


30 &b4 豐xa2 31 ②a1

Black has only a rook and two pawns for the queen, and later lost.

Obstruction as a Defensive Method

As mentioned earlier, obstruction may take the form of excluding pieces from the game. Here is a remarkable example:



W. Rudolph
The Chess Amateur, 1911

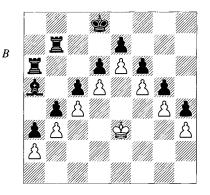
1 **≜**a4+!!

White first deflects Black's king in order to win important tempi to close (block) the position.

1...**⊈**xa4

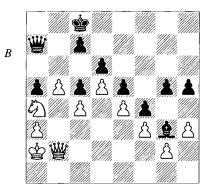
Not 1... 含c4?? 2 含b3+ 含b5 3 c4+!, when White even wins.

2 b3+ 當b5 3 c4+ 當c6 4 d5+ 當d7 5 e6+ 當xd8 6 f5 (D)



Black is two rooks and a bishop ahead, but nevertheless he cannot win. Rooks need open files, while the bishop is colour-blind and can only attack dark squares.

The last example was of course artificial, but related ideas can be seen in real games too:



A. Petrosian – Hazai Schilde (Under-18) 1970

45...**肾b**6!

Black tries his last chance, and it works.

46 **②**xb6+?

White is hypnotized by the value of a whole queen. He needed to decline the gift, keep the knight on the board and target the a5-pawn. His plan should thus be 豐c3 (or 豐d2), 包b2, and \$b3-a4. In that case he will win only a pawn, but he will gradually make progress as the position will not be fully blocked.

46...cxb6 47 h4

Apparently opening the game, but it is illusory.

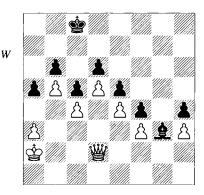
47...gxh4 48 營d2

Or 48 \cong c1 h3 49 \cong h1 h2!.

48...h3

Possibly this was the idea White missed when he decided to take the queen.

49 gxh3 h4 (D)



White is a queen for a bishop ahead but to no avail. The game soon ended peacefully:

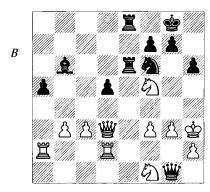
50 \$b3 \$b7 51 \$a4 \$a7 52 **\(\text{ \text{**

Interference

Before we proceed with the exercises, we should take a look at the tactical method called interference. Most writers consider it a distinct tactical method, but its essential idea is obstruction, so I have decided to include it in this chapter.

It often occurs that two of our opponent's pieces are carrying out important functions via lines that intersect at a particular square. Perhaps a bishop is protecting an important square via a diagonal, and a rook is carrying out a similar function via a file. At the point where the file and diagonal intersect, we should look for ways to interfere with their operations by putting one of our own pieces there (we might also take advantage by forcing one of our opponent's pieces to step onto this square). No matter how our opponent takes our piece, the harmony is broken, and one of these pieces will no longer be performing its defensive duty. This complicatedsounding formula is best shown by an example (see following diagram):

For the moment White's queen is protecting the knight, and the rook on d2 guards the whole



Martinović – Scherbakov Belgrade 2000

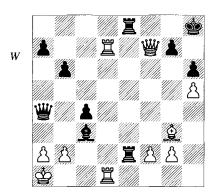
second rank. However, Black's next move destroyed all their happiness, and led to a quick disaster for White:

33... \(\mathbb{Z}\)e2! 34 \(\Delta\)xh6+

This desperate move gives the white king some breathing space. 34 罩xe2 loses at once to 34...豐xf1+ 35 含h4 g5#. Other moves are no good, since Black has mating threats, and 34 豐xe2 loses material.

34...gxh6 35 罩xe2 營xf1+ 36 含h4 罩e5! 37 g4 复f2+ 0-1

The next example is an even purer case, and a rare practical instance of a study theme known as a 'Novotny'.



Miles – Pritchett Lloyds Bank Masters, London 1982

White seems to be facing inevitable mate, while everything in Black's camp looks perfect. The bishop is protecting the vital g7-square, and is untouchable, the two rooks protect each other, and the back rank looks firmly protected.

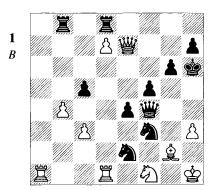
It took Tony Miles only one move to clarify the situation in his favour, but what a move that was:

34 **≜e**5‼ 1-0

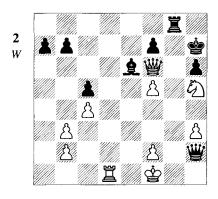
Interference in all its glory. From being the most modest onlooker at the party, the bishop becomes the Belle of the Ball. It attacks g7, defends b2, neutralizes its black counterpart, and cuts the communication between the rooks. What else can we ask of a single move? The lines are simple:

- a) 34... 其2xe5 (now the c3-bishop does not defend g7) 35 豐xg7#.
 - b) 34... 2xb2+ leads nowhere: 35 2xb2.
- c) 34... 2xe5 leaves the e8-rook undefended: 35 饗xe8+ 含h7 36 饗g6+ 含g8 37 罩d8+ 饗e8 38 罩xe8#.

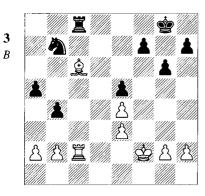
Exercises



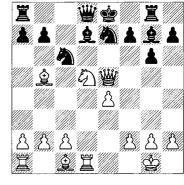
Mate in two.



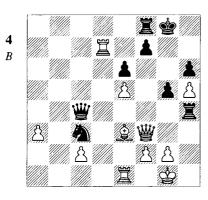
Use obstruction to create a mating-net.



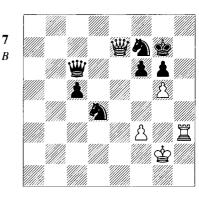
If Black tries to win the pinned piece immediately by 33... 2d8, he will be disappointed after 34 & 44. So...



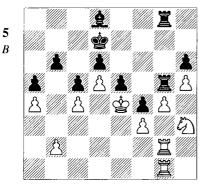
Use obstruction to win material.



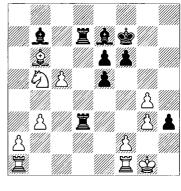
Black missed a golden opportunity here.



How does Black evade White's cunning attempt to secure a draw?



Should Black retreat?



8

В

Black first frees an open line, and then freezes his opponent's defences.

10 Removing the Defender

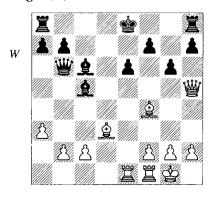
The idea of removing the defender is one of the most common tactical ideas in chess. We have already encountered instances where a key defender is removed by deflection, overloading, pin, or other tactical methods, but in this chapter we shall be focusing on the more direct case of the defender being physically removed by exchange or sacrifice.

When the defences are becoming stretched, there will be some relatively weak links in the defensive chain, normally in the form of key points that are defended only by one piece. Finding and destroying such pieces is then the main task for the attacker. Pawns in front of the enemy king are often a natural target for a destructive sacrifice. Once the pawn-shield is shattered, the enemy king becomes an easy target for the remaining attacking pieces.

The king is especially vulnerable to this type of sacrifice when it has remained in the centre for too long, as we see in the following example.

Bojkov – Yasim Istanbul 2006

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 公c3 单b4 4 公ge2 dxe4 5 a3 单e7 6 公xe4 公f6 7 公2g3 公bd7 8 单d3 c5 9 dxc5 公xc5 10 公xc5 单xc5 11 0-0 单d7 12 公h5 公xh5 13 豐xh5 豐b6 14 单f4 单c6 15 罩ae1 g6? (D)



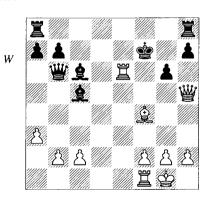
A king in the centre should sound alarm bells, especially when the attacking forces have as much freedom as White's do here. I did not hesitate long before sacrificing; indeed, I had this in mind when playing 12 h5. It is not so difficult to assess: Black is permanently deprived of his castling rights, and will have no meaningful pawn-cover, making him an easy prey. The attacker will always enjoy good chances in such a position, especially if there are open lines for his pieces, and they can be brought into the attack with gain of tempi.

16 **≜**xg6!

Due to the pin against his h8-rook, Black must surrender the e-pawn.

17...\$d7 is met by 18 營h3, setting up a battery, when 18...\$exg2 attempts to deflect the queen, but White wins in various ways. 19 国d6++\$ec7 20 營d7+\$eb8 21 国xb6+\$ed6 22 \$exd6# is the line that I planned, but easier and better is 19 国d1+\$ec8 20 国e8#.

17...會f8 18 魚h6+ 會f7 19 豐e5 (powerful centralization!) 19...豐d8 20 罩e1 and Black is helpless against the threats of 21 豐g7# and 21 豐xc5.

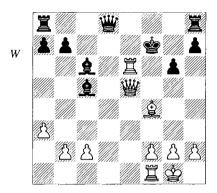


18 學e5 罩he8

After 18... 常g8 19 兔e3! 兔xe3 there comes the zwischenzug 20 罩e7 with mate.

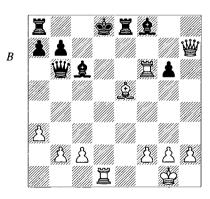
 the move that I foresaw, and quite sufficient of course, but the computer finds a forced mate: 23 宣f4+ 宣f6 24 皇xf6+ 當f7 25 豐xh7+ 當e6 26 宣e1+ 皇e4 27 宣fxe4+ 當d6 28 冨e6+ 當d5 29 豐d7+ 皇d6 30 冨6e5+ 當c4 31 冨1e4+ 豐d4 32 豐b5#.

18... $brac{a}{b}$ d8 (D) was the best defence, and it took me some time to calculate the most precise continuation.



White needs to destroy the defender of the dark squares by 19 豐xc5! \$\preceive{e}\$xe6 and then to proceed with an attack based on opposite-coloured bishops: 20 \$\preceive{g}\$5 \$\psi\$f8 21 \$\preceive{e}\$e1+\$\preceive{e}\$d7 22 \$\preceive{e}\$e7+\$\preceive{e}\$e8 23 \$\psi\$e5. Black must now surrender his queen by 23... \$\psi\$xe7 (worse is 23... \$\psi\$d8 24 \$\preceive{e}\$c7+\$\psi\$xc7 25 \$\psi\$xh8+\$\preceive{e}\$d7 26 \$\psi\$xh7+\$\preceive{e}\$c8 27 \$\psi\$h8+\$\preceive{e}\$d7 28 \$\psi\$h3+) 24 \$\preceive{e}\$xe7, which leaves White with a material gain of two pawns while still attacking.

19 營f6+ 曾g8 20 皇e5 皇f8 21 營h8+曾f7 22 罩f6+ 曾e7 23 營xh7+曾d8 24 罩d1+(D)



1-0

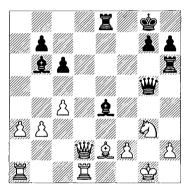
At the board I saw about 90% of the lines that I have included in the annotations. Do not be scared, or think that this is beyond your abilities: the lines were forced and involved a lot of natural and logical moves. With enough practice and concentration you will also be able to calculate long forcing lines: it is a skill that can be learnt, as long as you practice actually doing it, such as in the exercises provided in each chapter of this book.

We now take a closer look at how to recognize when a destructive sacrifice might be possible. Our **searching strategy** could be as follows:

- 1. Which pieces are under attack?
- 2. Find the defenders of all the pieces that are under attack.
 - 3. Can you capture the defender?

В

Let's see how this works in practice:



Vaznonis – Sakalauskas Lithuanian Ch. Kaunas 2008

Question 1: Both queens are under attack. White's kingside is under heavy pressure, especially the knight on g3.

Question 2: The white queen is defended by the rook, while the g3-knight is defended by the pawns on f2 and h2.

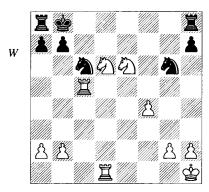
Black has concentrated his troops on the kingside, and asking the first two questions brings us to the conclusion that White's only defender is the knight on g3. The answer to question 3 is a resounding 'yes':

26...**營xg3+!**

The f2-pawn is pinned, and thus useless for defence, while the capture with the other pawn opens the h-file:

27 hxg3 \(\mathbb{H}\) h1# (0-1)

The next example is somewhat similar to the previous one. The solution is similar as well annihilation of Black's only defender:



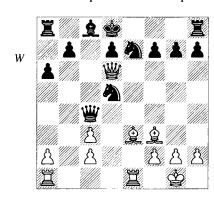
Filippov - Muzammil Mumbai 2008

28 **基xc6!** bxc6

There is a bonus: not only has Black's best defender been removed, but the b-file is also opened.

29 罩d3 a5 30 罩b3+ 1-0

In general, removing important defenders often does also open lines for our pieces.

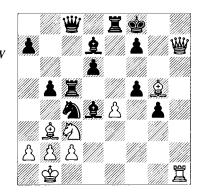


Oral - Kantorik Slovakian Team Ch 2000

White now physically removes two important defenders, while opening a file for his rook, and a diagonal for the bishop:

15 &xd5! 分xd5 16 營xd5! 1-0

If we find a clear answer to the question as to which piece is the most important defender, the rest will often be easy:

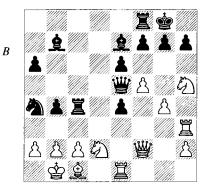


Zeynelabidin - Abello French Junior Ch 1999

Black's position is held together by his dark-

squared bishop. Seek and destroy!
25 營h6+ 皇g7 26 皇f6!! ②d2+ 27 含a1 (5)xh3 + 28 axh3 1-0

In practice the 'seek and destroy' principle is harder to achieve when the enemy king is hiding behind its pawn-cover. But then additional sacrifices might help:



R. Griffiths - Bokros European Clubs Cup, Antalya 2007

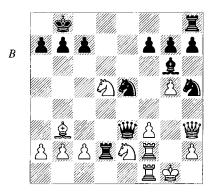
White's bishop protects the b2-square, but there is a way to destroy it:

27... 基xc2! 28 含xc2 基c8+ 29 含b1

If 29 \(\frac{1}{2}\)c4 to defend the b2-pawn with his major pieces, Black can bring another piece into the attack with decisive effect: 29...\$d5! -+.

29... [xc1+! 30 含xc1 資xb2+ 31 含d1 公c3+ 32 罩xc3 bxc3 33 ②xe4 Qxe4 0-1

We usually sacrifice material to open up the position of our opponent's king.



Boudre – Prié Chamalières 2007

Here Prié could not stand the temptation, took a pawn with check by 20... wxg5+ and eventually won after a long fight. Later he found a clear-cut solution based on destroying White's most important defender:

20... **基xd5!!**

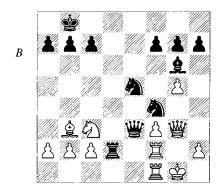
Enemy number one off the board!

21 &xd5

Now Black brings in his reserves with gain of tempo:

21... \(\bar{2}\) d8! 22 \(\bar{2}\) b3 \(\bar{2}\) d2

Look how desperate White's pieces are! Due to the pin he cannot move.



24...**食h**5!

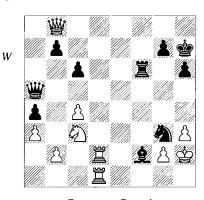
The last piece joins the fray and White is helpless.

25 **②d1 ②e2+ 26 會g2 호**xf3+ 27 豐xf3 豐xg5+ 28 豐g3 ②xg3

Black wins. Simple chess, is it not?!

The idea of removing the defender can also be used to gain material. Most players tend to

keep their pieces guarding one another whenever possible, but this may prove insufficient to keep them safe.



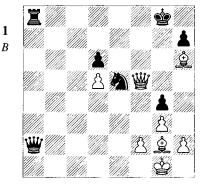
Bacrot – RausisEuropean Union Ch, Liverpool 2008

Here is a simple case: Black's bishop is protecting his knight, but we can easily remove it at the price of an exchange.

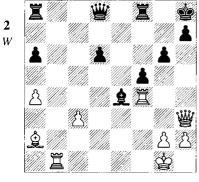
35 罩xf2 1-0

White emerges with two minor pieces for a rook.

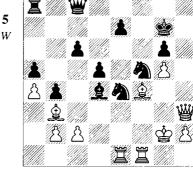
Exercises



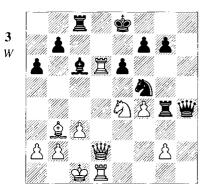
Demolish the last defender of the king!



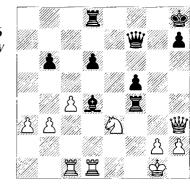
Black has one active piece...



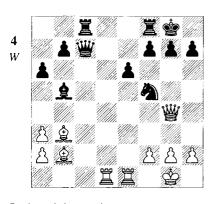
Three in a row.



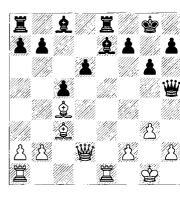
Black has sent too many of his troops to attack the kingside.



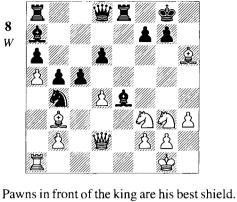
Note the importance of a diagonal.



Seek and destroy!



The fianchetto has weakened Black's dark squares.



11 The Power of the Pawn

The pawn is the least powerful piece on the chessboard, but since there are eight of them in each army, these modest footsoldiers define the character of the fight. Pawn-chains provide the strategic outline of the struggle, and the quality of the pawn-cover enjoyed by each king is a major tactical factor. Pawns are great defenders when they remain united and intact on their starting positions, especially as their choice of moving one or two squares gives them extra possibilities if they come under attack.

Pawns can also be used in an attack, as their small value means they can be sacrificed to open lines or force weaknesses without this constituting a major loss of attacking firepower. They can also act as advanced outposts, like thorns in the flesh of your enemy, staking out territory and supporting possible sallies by the more powerful pieces.

But every pawn has a special gift: whenever it reaches the final rank it can turn into a new piece, much stronger than before. It is this special power on which we shall focus in this chapter. We should also note that one must always think carefully before rejecting a pawn sacrifice; it is remarkable how often it happens that a pawn which has been spurned goes on later to wreak havoc with its further advance towards promotion.

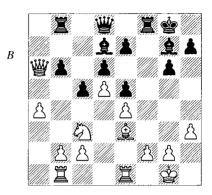
I personally witnessed the following game in which the power of a pawn duo was demonstrated

Khalifman – Ermenkov Burgas 1994

1 d4 公f6 2 公f3 c5 3 d5 g6 4 公c3 兔g7 5 e4 d6 6 兔e2 0-0 7 0-0 公a6 8 兔f4 公c7 9 a4 b6 10 墨e1 a6 11 h3 公d7 12 兔c4 罩b8 13 營d3 f6 14 罩ab1 公e5 15 公xe5 fxe5 16 兔e3 兔d7

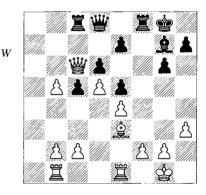
Black attempts a simplifying combination to free his position.

17 **魚xa6 ②xa6 18 豐xa6** (D)



18...b5 19 ②xb5 **Qxb5 20 axb5**

Having sacrificed two pawns to close off the white queen's road back home, Ermenkov was expecting that the perpetual attack on the queen would assure him a draw. However, there was a surprise in store for him.



After prolonged thought, Khalifman intuitively sacrificed his queen. Obviously he could not calculate all the possible lines here, but he felt that his passed pawns supported by his pieces should net him the full point.

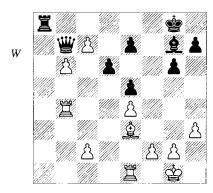
24 b4!! \(\mathbb{Z}\)xc6 25 dxc6

White has a rook and a passed pawn duo in return for the queen. His plan should be to assure promotion for at least one of them. Like in a game of curling, White's pieces must now clear the road for the stones (pawns).

25...e6

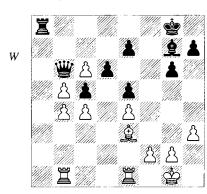
Black had at his disposal two other attempts to blockade the white pawns.

Stohl gave simply 25...cxb4 26 b6 as winning for White, but while this assessment seems to be correct, the line should be analysed further: 26...豐c8! (Black should block the pawns at any rate) 27 c7 豐b7 28 黨xb4 黨a8 (D).



Black has created a solid defensive set-up, but White needs just one more open file to break it: 29 c4! 皇f8 30 罩d1 e6 31 c5! dxc5 32 罩bb1 皇e7 33 皇xc5! 皇h4 (33...皇xc5 34 罩d8+ 宫g7 35 罩xa8 豐xa8 36 b7 豐a2 37 b8豐) 34 罩a1 罩e8 35 罩a7 豐c6 36 皇e3 罩f8 37 宫h2! +-. White doesn't need to hurry; 罩c1 is inevitable.

Another attempt to blockade the pawns starts with 25... 響b6. The following instructive line is also given by Stohl: 26 c4! 罩a8 (D).



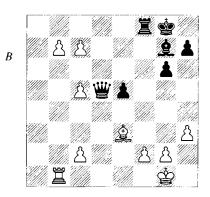
Now take care, as the path for the stones must be cleared carefully: 27 罩al! (an important move: White must penetrate via the open file; in addition, he swaps one of the defenders) 27... □ xal 28 □ xal e6 29 □ a6 □ c7 30 bxc5 dxc5 31 □ a8+ cf7 32 ② xc5 cf6 33 □ a7 □ c8

26 **ℤed1!**

White can also play 26 bxc5, but after 26...d5 he will have to contend with Black's ideas of ...d4.

26... **当b8**

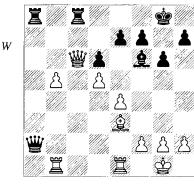
27 bxc5 d5 28 exd5 exd5 29 罩xd5 豐e8 30 c7 豐f7 31 b6 豐xd5 32 b7 (D)



1-0

Black is a whole queen up, but has no defence.

Oddly enough, some years later I applied the same winning idea, of creating two connected passed pawns, in the Bulgarian Championship:

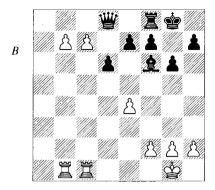


Bojkov – V. Alexandrov Bulgarian Ch, Dupnitsa 1998

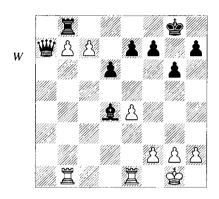
25 b6! ****ab8

In case of 25... 基xc6 26 dxc6 基f8 27 b7 營a5 28 基ec1 the pawns are supported by all White's remaining pieces, and are obviously impossible

to stop. 28... 響c7 29 兔b6 響b8 30 兔d8 響xd8 31 c7 (D) could be a pretty finish:



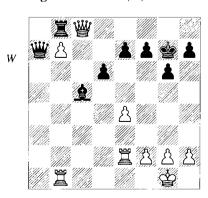
26 b7 罩xc6 27 dxc6 豐a5 28 兔b6 豐a6 29 兔a7 豐xa7 30 c7 兔d4 (D)



31 c8營+

White has promoted one of the pawns, while keeping the other alive.

31...常g7 32 罩e2 桌c5 (D)

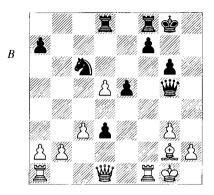


White is already an exchange ahead, but the second passed pawn also deserves promotion. As we said before, the road in front of the pawn should be cleared.

33 **營xb8! 1-0**

Black decided to call it a day due to 33... 豐xb8 34 罩a2 with 罩a8 and b8豐 to follow.

As we have already seen, it can cost a great deal of material to neutralize a well-supported passed pawn. The following example is even more drastic:



Bojkov – Bayram Izmir 2002

Unfortunately, not all of my experiences with passed-pawn duos are pleasant. In this game I had a lesson – luckily, for free. I had just exchanged knights on d5, and was highly optimistic: I am a pawn ahead, and a second one is coming on the next move. I did not consider seriously the knight sacrifice, but this was exactly what my opponent did!

22...e4!!

Now White is in danger too!

23 dxc6 e3 24 罩f4 豐c5 25 當h1 罩fe8 26 罩e4?

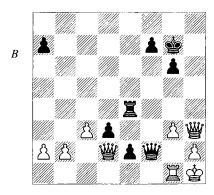
Following a passive plan of exchanging rooks that leaves my back rank weak. White should seek counterplay with 26 豐b3!, the main point being 26... 這e7 27 罩d4 with complications.

Having played brilliantly to achieve a won game, Black now blundered in time-trouble:

30...\$h7??

Instead he could have created a true masterpiece by letting me promote: 30... 基本4!! 31 c8豐+ (with check!) 31... 會g7 32 豐h3 (D).

An amazing position! Black's pawn duo will cost White *both* his queens. We already know the method; the road should be cleared:



32... 營xg1+!! 33 含xg1 e1營+ 34 營xe1 基xe1+ 35 含f2 d2—+ and there is nothing more for me to do than congratulate my opponent on his excellent play.

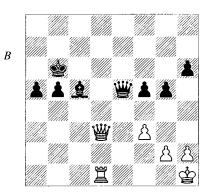
30... №g7?! is also better than the move played, and should lead to a draw.

In the game Black managed to win only one queen for his mighty passed pawns, while I made the maximum of my advanced pawn.

31 營xd3 營xg1+ 32 含xg1 e1營+ 33 含g2 冨xe4? 34 c8營 冨e2+ 35 含h3 營f2 36 含h4 冨e5 37 含g4 營xh2 38 含f4 營h5 39 營g4 營h6+ 39... 冨f5+ 40 營dxf5!.

40 當xe5 營g7+ 41 當d5 f5 42 營h4+ 當g8 43 營d8+ 當h7 44 營h4+ 當g8 45 營d8+ 當h7 46 當e6 1-0

An important general principle is that the power of the pawns increases in the endgame. If there are no other pieces on the board, even a single pawn can become a queen and win the game. As a general rule, two connected passed pawns on the sixth rank overpower a rook if no other pieces can intervene.



Bojkov – Murrey French Team Ch, Niort 2007

I knew that my position was lost, and that I could only hope for a perpetual check somehow. But when we reached this position, I suddenly realized that the power of the pawn duo gave Black the opportunity to liquidate to a won endgame. My experienced opponent also realized this:

48...**≜d4**!!

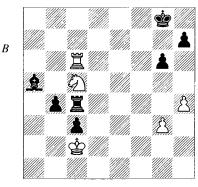
The best practical decision. Murrey does not give me any chances for random combinations and blocks the open d-file.

49 罩b1

After this move I lost silently, but the line 49 豐xd4+ 豐xd4 50 基xd4 b4 leads to an easy win; for instance, 51 基d6+ 含c5 52 基xh6 b3 53 基h7 a4 54 基b7 含c4 and a pawn marches through.

49...a4 50 g3 含a5 51 含g2 b4 52 罩c1 g4 53 罩c6 兔b6 54 罩c8 gxf3+ 55 含xf3 b3 56 罩c4 營e3+ 57 營xe3 兔xe3 58 含xe3 b2 59 罩c8 a3 60 含d4 含a6 61 罩b8 a2 0-1

A single passed pawn generally needs more piece support if it is to make its way to promotion past hostile forces. The supporting pieces may clear the way for the pawn by using various tactical ideas that we have seen in earlier chapters. Particularly common themes in this respect are removing the defender and deflection:



Garcia Palermo – Rowson Palau 2008

Black's pawns are blockaded, but Black finds a way to set them in motion:

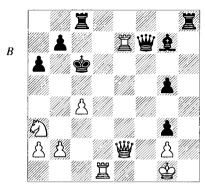
51...b3+!

White must capture with the king, since his knight is pinned.

52 **\$xb3 c2**

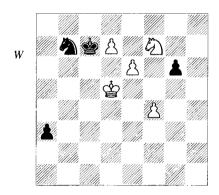
Black soon won.

Here is an example of multiple deflections combined with a mating threat:



C. Saavedra – Suri Guines 2001

1...臭d4+! 2 罩xd4 營f2+! 3 營xf2 罩h1+!! 4 含xh1 gxf2 0-1



Khenkin – Postny Maalot-Tarshiha 2008

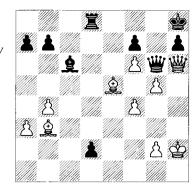
A decoy helps White to promote his pawn: 53 d8∰+! ②xd8 54 e7 1-0

Like in all combinations, time is important when we promote our pawns. Sometimes our own pieces are in the way of our pawns, and we need to find ways to get rid of them with tempo (see following diagram).

1 <u>@</u>xf7!

White first clears the road for the passed pawn.

1...≝xh6+



Jasny – Suchomel Czech Republic 2004

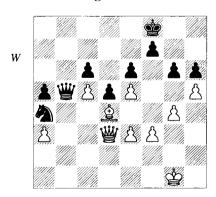
2 gxh6 d1營

Now the bishop is in the pawn's way. It steps aside while also cutting off the black rook's protection of the back rank:

3 臭e8!! 曾g8

3... 黨xe8 4 f7+ 黨xe5 5 f8營#; 3... 營h5+ 4 遠xh5 當g8 5 f7+ 當f8 6 皇g7+ 當e7 7 f5 +-. 4 f7+ 當f8 5 皇g7+ 當e7 6 f8營+ 1-0

So far we have only seen examples of the successful promotion of passed pawns. But we have not seen how these pawns are created. Our most faithful friend in this endeavour is a method called **breakthrough**:



Mecking – Timman Bazna 2008

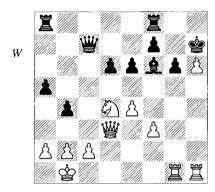
White creates a passed pawn with a simple exchange:

40 曾xb5 cxb5 41 c6 1-0

The lone passed pawn can be stopped by the king by playing 41... 堂e8, but the main problem comes from the other side: 42 g5! is a standard

breakthrough, clearing the way for the h-pawn. After 42...hxg5 43 h6, Black's king is incapable of stopping two passed pawns that are so far apart, while the knight on a4 is too far away to have any impact on events.

When the passed pawn is solidly blockaded by the opponent's king, it may be worth major sacrifices to bring the pawn to a different file, especially as this will tend to gain time with a discovered check in cases where the pawn is supported from behind.



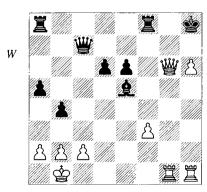
Sada – Y. Rodriguez Cuba 2000

White first cleared a path for his queen to support the passed pawn:

1 e5! <u>@xe5</u>

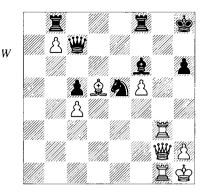
1...dxe5 2 ②xe6! +-.

2 ②xe6! fxe6 3 豐xg6+ 曾h8 (D)



Now the pawn can be switched to a different file. This costs a whole queen, but the investment is recouped with a lot of interest:

4 豐g7+!! 总xg7 5 hxg7++ 含g8 6 罩h8+ 含f7 7 gxf8豐+ 罩xf8 8 罩h7+ 1-0 Now let's take a look at a case where several threats were combined:



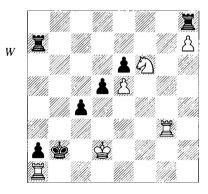
Kotanjian – Zysk Athens 2006

42 **黨g8+ 會h7**

Black rejected the mass exchanges of the major pieces by 42... 基xg8 43 豐xg8+ 基xg8 44 基xg8+ 全h7 because White promotes and wins by 45 b8豐. Unfortunately for him, the move 42 基g8+ also cleared a line for the queen:

43 **營g6+! 1-0** 43...**公**xg6 44 fxg6#.

In some special cases the pawn can transform into a piece other than the queen – which is called an **underpromotion**. The most common case by far is underpromotion to a knight, as this may mean that the promotion comes with check, or creates a knight fork.



Dubinsky – Lapshun New York 2000

White's position looks dubious but he finds a good move:

1 罩c1!!

1 \(\mathbb{Z}\)gg1? d4 is better for Black.

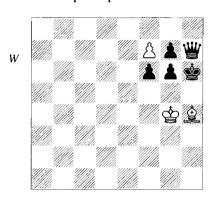
Now it is Black's turn to make a crucial decision and he passes the test:

1...a19)!

And not 1...al 빨?? 2 嶌c2+ \$\text{\$c}\$1 3 틸gl#.

2 罩h1! 公b3+ 3 含e2 1/2-1/2

Underpromotion to a rook or bishop is very uncommon in practice, since these pieces have no additional powers compared to a queen. Therefore the only reason to choose a bishop or rook is to avoid stalemate ideas, or else to stalemate oneself, and these themes are normally restricted to composed positions.

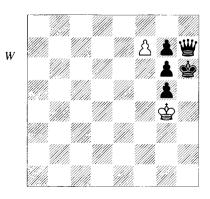


E. Pogosiants Shakhmaty v SSSR, 1981

White first blocks in all of Black's pieces:

1 **£g5+!**

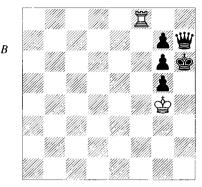
1...fxg5 (D)



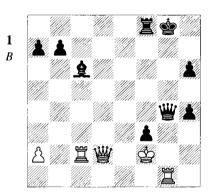
White must now be careful, since he has left Black with very few legal moves.

2 f8罩! (D)

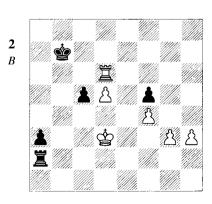
This underpromotion is the only way to win. 2 f8豐? is only enough for a draw after 2...豐g8 3 豐xg8 stalemate.



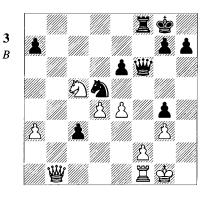
Exercises



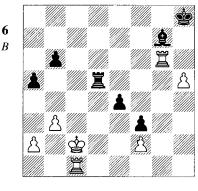
Passed pawns must be pushed!



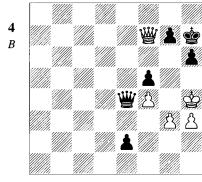
Time is money.



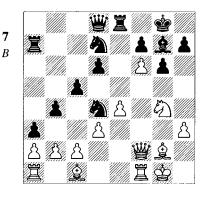
Support the modest footsoldier.



The theme here is breakthrough.

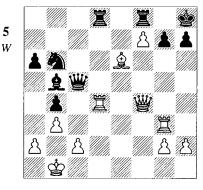


Find a way for Black to win. Greed will be punished!

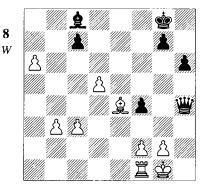


Pawn power increases into the...?

8



Passed pawns don't have to be promoted in order to be useful.



Pawns have a lust to expand, as Nimzowitsch reminded us.

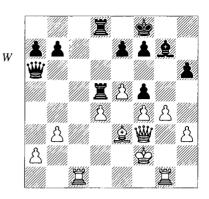
12 Back-Rank Mate

In most chess games it is a good idea to castle early in the game. This is because we need to bring our rooks harmoniously into the game and find a safe haven for our king behind a strong pawn-shield. We generally avoid moving the pawns in front of the king so as not to create weaknesses. If we advance the rook's pawn, then this can invite a sacrifice, while moving the knight's pawn can leave us open to an invasion on the complex of squares this move weakens. Meanwhile, advancing the bishop's pawn leaves the king exposed to checks on the diagonal, and overall loosens our position.

However, sometimes the lack of *luft* – an escape-hatch for the king - might allow another evil: a mate on the bank rank. If we spot that our opponent's king does not have any escapesquares on its second rank, we should be alert to ideas by which we might mate him on his back rank with a queen or a rook (or a promoting pawn). Since we are dealing with mate here, a very large sacrifice may be justified to bring this about by removing defenders or deflecting them. Before moving on to specific examples, we should note that a weak back rank often plays a role in chess strategy. Sometimes the battle for the centre hinges upon ideas that are based on an exploitation of a back-rank weakness at the end of a lengthy tactical sequence. In a battle arising from a well-played opening, neither side can necessarily afford to spend a tempo giving their king a flight-square, so this shouldn't be looked upon as just a fluke, but rather as an organic feature of the chessboard struggle.

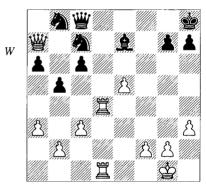
In the following diagram, Black's king has no flight-squares on its second rank. The d8-rook protects the back rank, but this piece must also protect its colleague on d5. Thus the rook is overloaded, and we immediately see the solution:

25 **営xd5!** 1-0



Timoshenko – C. Foisor Cappelle la Grande 2008

In the next position, Black's king again lacks *luft*, which White exploits by a deflection.

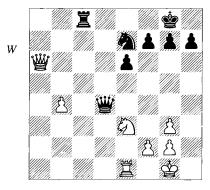


C. Bauer – Renet French Ch, Aix-les-Bains 2007

White's doubled rooks on the d-file are obviously well-placed, but his most powerful piece, his queen, appears to be out of the game. It would be nice if we could use it to help in the attack...

28 曾67! 1-0

The next example is far from obvious. If you spend a lot of time tackling tactical exercises, then you start to find it easier and easier to spot possibilities like this. Hint: consider which are the critical squares on the back rank.



Khmelnitsky – Kabatiansky USSR 1989

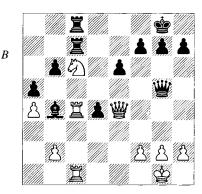
The first precondition is met: Black's king has no flight-squares. But how on earth can we possibly exploit this fact?! The rook on c8 (first critical square) is well protected, and our rook is blocked by no fewer than three pieces on its way to the e8-square (second critical square). Still, knowing that the back-rank defenders must be destroyed or deflected, we might try the following:

1 9 f5!! 1-0

The black knight must defend the rook, so 1...exf5 is forced, but now we almost have access to the back rank for our rook. We need to hit the first critical square with 2 營xc8+! 公xc8 and enjoy the second one by 3 罩e8#.

Controlling a critical square can have a decisive importance, and often it is not just a simple matter of counting how many times each side is covering a critical square. We also need to consider potential attacks and X-rays, and calculate the concrete variations with care.

In the following diagram, Black has an excellent concentration of forces on the c-file: the queen is also eyeing c1. This is clearly a critical square, since if Black could put a queen or rook on this square it will be mate. However, it looks like the knight is well protected on c6 (attacked twice but defended three times) and that access to White's back rank is therefore firmly closed



San Segundo – Morović Spanish Team Ch, Cala Galdana 1994

off. However, it is not the number of attacks on c6 that is decisive here.

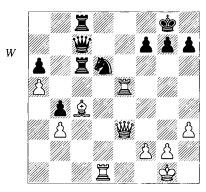
Let us see what will happen if we destroy the knight. We immediately see that taking back with the queen loses material (two rooks for a queen and a knight). But what if he takes back with the rook?

White will win an exchange, but in the process will lose control over the truly critical square, c1. He is only defending it once, while Black is hitting it twice – directly from the queen from g5, and a second one from the X-raying c8-rook.

24...罩xc6! 0-1

25 豐xc6 基xc6 26 基xc6 h6 costs White material, while the main idea is 25 基xc6 豐xc1+! 26 基xc1 基xc1+ 27 豐el 基xe1#

We should also calculate if our opponent can cover the check on the critical square with some of his pieces.

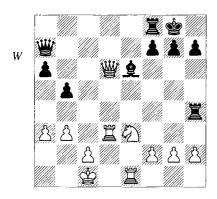


V. Dimitrov – Gligorić Pozarevac 1995

The critical square here is e8. It is well protected by a knight and a rook. But we can easily remove the knight:

35 罩xd6! 1-0

Escape-squares might be covered by our pieces:



Rohit – Nadig Commonwealth Ch, Nagpur 2008

White would like to destroy the rook on f8 and deliver mate on the bank rank. However, Black will then have an escape-route via e7. This window should be slammed shut!

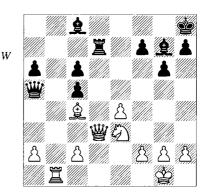
25 **(2)** f5! 1-0

Simultaneously attacking the rook and taking away the important escape-square on e7. Black resigned due to 25...全xf5 26 豐xf8+ 全xf8 27 罩d8# or 25...罩h5 26 豐xf8+ 全xf8 27 罩d8#.

A check on the bank rank does not always promise mate, especially when our opponent can interpose and open an escape-square for his king. But this rescue effort may cost significant material (*see following diagram*).

23 營xd7! 1-0

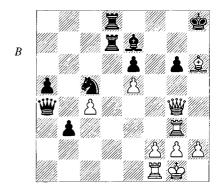
By 23...\(\documents\) xd7 24 \(\beta\)b8+ \(\delta\)f8 Black manages to escape the back-rank mate, but after 25 \(\beta\)xf8+



Rublevsky – Zviagintsev Russian Team Ch, Dagomys 2008

會g7 26 萬xf7+ and 27 萬xd7 White will gain a rook and two bishops for the queen. One important detail is that the counterattack against White's own back rank is harmless: 26...會h6 27 萬xd7 豐e1+ 28 身f1 covers the king.

We have so far been discussing back-rank mates by rooks and queens. But there is a third piece that can help us exploit a weak back rank – a pawn.



M. Gurevich – Pavasović European Ch, Plovdiv 2008

Black's position looks critical but it is his move and he is a piece ahead, and has a powerful passed pawn. Additionally, White's king is in danger of a back-rank mate. For the moment the critical d1-square is covered, but this will not last long:

34...罩d1!!

Black destroys the main defender of the back rank – the rook.

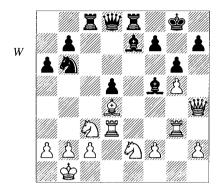
35 罩xd1 罩xd1+ 36 豐xd1

And now comes the finest hour of the brave infantryman.

36...b2! 0-1

White is either mated after 37 豐xa4 bl豐+38 豐d1 豐xd1# or loses material after 37 豐f1 豐a1, when Black promotes a second pawn.

There are plenty of typical mating pattern that are closely related to the back-rank mate:



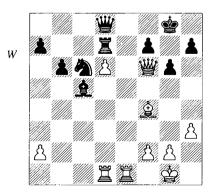
Vasiukov – J. Howell Yaroslavl 1990

The d4-bishop is controlling the h8- and g7-squares, which makes Black's king vulnerable on the back rank.

21 **曾xh7+! 1-0**

21... 含xh7 22 罩h3+ 食xh3 23 罩xh3+ 含g8 24 罩h8#

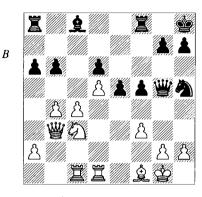
A vulnerable back rank can be combined with other tactical ideas:



S. Bjerke – C. Andersson Oslo 2008

White threatens mate, while simultaneously cutting off the black king's escape-route.

Mates on the a- and h-files may also be considered back-rank mates. You just need to rotate your view by 90 degrees.



I. Marks – H. Mortensen Gibraltar 2008

Black first chases his enemy into the corner.

20...曾e3+! 21 會h1

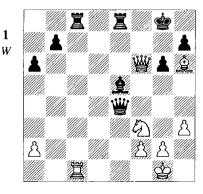
Then he deflects his only protection on the h-file.

21... ②g3+! 22 hxg3

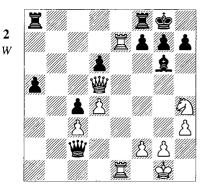
And finally he brings in decisive reinforce-

22...罩f6 0-1

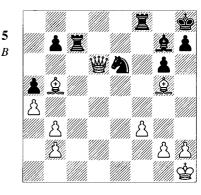
Exercises



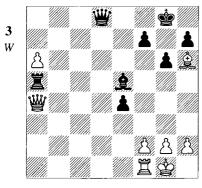
A knight fork will help you mate on the back rank.



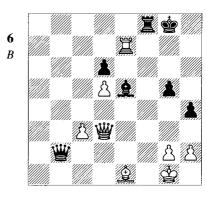
Black has just played 23...a6-a5. Is this move positionally sound, and good for Black, or is it a terrible blunder?



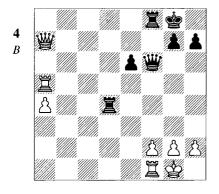
The critical squares here are c1 and ... ?



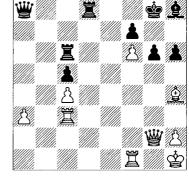
Black's bank rank is hopelessly weak...



35 營h7# and 35 營g6+ are White's threats. Is it time for Black to resign?



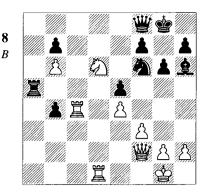
You are about to discover a typical mating pattern all by yourself!



7

R

Black's bishop looks locked in forever and White has enough compensation for his pawn weaknesses. True or false?

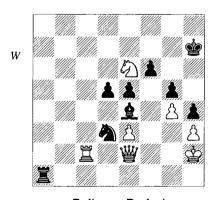


White had played excellently, winning an exchange. However, his last move was a terrible blunder, which Black punished instantly. Can you spot what was coming?

13 Stalemate

Sometimes things go wrong and we find ourselves in a difficult position. In this situation one should never give up hope and should fight to the very end. Chess is a sport like many others, and resourcefulness and fighting spirit might be well rewarded. In this chapter and the next, we look at some tactical methods that can be used to save difficult positions.

Stalemate is one of the more cunning ways to achieve a draw. It is one of the little quirks of chess that the game is drawn if a player has no legal moves and his king is not under attack, no matter how large his opponent's material advantage might be; there is no reason why we should not seek to take advantage of this. It is important to understand that stalemate ideas don't just happen by accident: we should be thinking about immobilizing our pawns, and be looking for ways to force the opponent to take any remaining pieces. We should also note that many players with a large advantage fail to think about their opponent's stalemate ideas until it is too late...



Bojkov – Borisek European Team Ch, Gothenburg 2005

The scoring in this event was based on match points and after the other three games finished peacefully, my game was left to decide the match. I had played very badly in the middlegame and my opponent was gradually increasing his advantage. A move ago he had sacrificed his queen to penetrate onto my first rank, and now threatens an unstoppable mate. With less than a minute I had to find something, and fortunately I spotted that my king lacks moves. The decision: I need to get rid of all my unnecessary pieces!

67 ②xg5+!

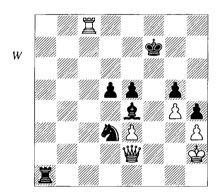
First the minor one that he could easily neglect to take if I left it until last.

67...fxg5

Not, of course, 67...當h6?? 68 ②xe4.

68 罩c7+ 常g8 69 罩c8+ 常f7 (D)

He has to step onto the f-file; otherwise I will keep on checking: 69... 全g7 70 基c7+ 全g6 71 基c6+.



70 罩f8+!

The time for a second sacrifice has come! 70...\$xf8

After 70... 會 771 單f7+ (or 71 單f1 包c1 and now 72 單f7+ or 72 罩xc1, both based on the same stalemate ideas) 71... 會 d6? (not a good way to avoid the draw, which Black can settle for by 71... 會 White can insist on a repetition by 72 罩f6+ (when 72... 會 c5? fails to 73 罩f1), but after 72 罩f1! he is probably winning (72... 包c1 73 罩f6+).

71 營印+!!

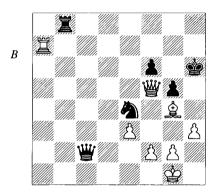
The only move, but good enough. It is also a double attack with my undefended queen. 71 響f3+? allows the bishop to move, when I will

have an additional pawn move: 71... 鱼xf3 72 e4 In #. 71 響f2+? fails to 71... 包f4!.

71...罩xf1 1/2-1/2

Stalemate!

The most important condition before you perform a stalemate idea is to have your king in a 'safety box'. This means a place from where it can neither move, nor be checked. In the previous case (and the next), this is already the case – the king has no squares to move to. Then you must take care of your pawns – are they blockaded, or can they move? Unlike a rook or especially a queen, pawns are hard to sacrifice in such a way that the opponent is forced to take them



Ormos – Betotsky Budapest 1951

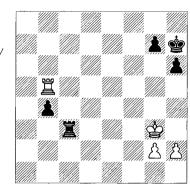
Here Black's pawns are blocked, so he just needs to sacrifice his remaining pieces in a way that doesn't lift the stalemate. The best order is usually minor pieces first, major pieces last. But the vital thing is to sacrifice them in a way that doesn't allow any of them to be ignored, so be sure, as always, to analyse carefully.

1...\bar{2}b1+2 \bar{2}h2 \bar{2}h1+

Black sacrifices his rook first, since he is sure that his knight must be taken on the next move.

If the king is not already stalemated, the 'safety box' must be constructed. Some cunning may be required for this, and a consideration of what moves the opponent needs to play if he is to make progress. Once this is achieved, the standard task of sacrificing the remaining

army is all that stands between you and a very satisfying half-point.



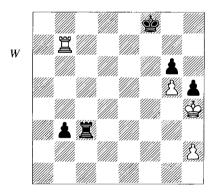
Navara – Svidler FIDE Grand Prix, Sochi 2008

43 含h4

White keeps his king active.

43...b3 44 \(\bar{2}\) b6 g6

It is hard to gain ground otherwise, since 44... 會g8 45 單b7 keeps the king cut off from the action.



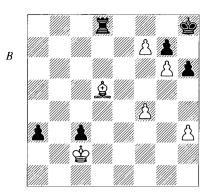
48 h3!

Suddenly everything is ready for a stalemate – the white king has created its own safety box.

48...\$e8 49 \(\beta\)xb3 \(\beta\)xb3 \(\beta\)2-1/2

If we can't sacrifice all our pieces to force an actual stalemate, we can in some cases nevertheless use stalemate ideas to save a difficult position. In the situation called the **rampant rook**, a rook repeatedly sacrifices itself, giving the opponent a choice between stalemate or perpetual check.

STALEMATE 93



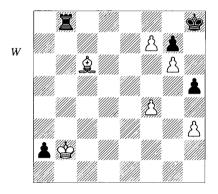
Aronian – Gelfand Amber Blindfold, Nice 2008

This is an example of this most famous of stalemate suicide ideas.

49...h5!

First Black exhausts all his pawn moves.

50 **②c6 罩f8 51 ③xc3 a2 52 ③b2 罩b8+**(D)

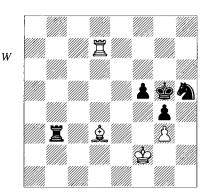


53 \(\delta a 1 \) h4 \(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \)

After 54 全8 量b1+55 含xa2 Black keeps offering the sacrifice of his rampant rook. These sacrifices take place on doubly-attacked squares, but this does not matter, as White has no way to capture the rook that avoids the draw: after 55... 量b2+56 含a3 量b3+57 含a4 量b4+58 含a5 量b5+, both 59 含xb5 and 59 全xb5 are stalemate.

Other pieces may also become rampant under certain circumstances, but a rook is the most common. Normally a 'rampant queen' will need to be taken quite soon, while the minor pieces can only give a perpetual sacrifice when there is some help from the structure or other pieces.

Rook endgames feature a lot of stalemate ideas. You just need to be aware of them.



Navara – Grishchuk FIDE Grand Prix, Baku 2008

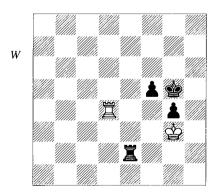
Black is a solid pawn up, and if everything proceeds normally should have every chance to win. This is why it is well worth White's while playing for a trap.

63 \(\bar{2}\)d4!?

With this innocent-looking move, Navara sets a devilish trap.

63...罩a3!

Black is alert and sidesteps it. In event of 63... \$\mu\$b2+64 \(\Delta e2 \) \$\mu\$xg3? 65 \(\Delta xg3 \) \$\mu\$xe2 (D) it looks like Black should win easily.

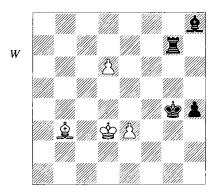


However, there now follows 66 $\Xi xg4+!$ fxg4 with a typical stalemate pattern for rook endgames. Declining the sacrifice is no use, as the $\Xi+\triangle$ vs Ξ ending would be a simple draw.

64 罩d8 罩a2+

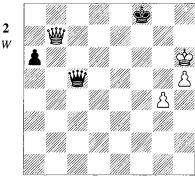
Grishchuk went on to win on move 86, but your opponent might not be that alert. In any case, setting a trap in a lost position can only increase one's chances for a draw.

Stalemate is most common when the king is near the corners or edges of the board, where it has fewer squares to move to. However, you should not assume that mid-board stalemates are impossible:

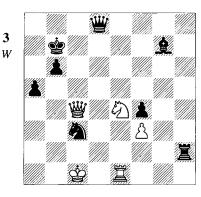


A. Khachikov Shakhmaty (Riga), 1973

1 兔e6+ 含h5 2 d7 罩g1 3 兔g4+! 含xg4 4 d8營 罩d1+ 5 含e4 罩xd8 Stalemate.



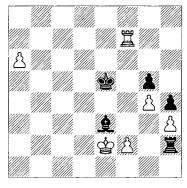
Should White take the pawn?



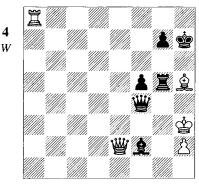
White's king is already in a safety box. What is next?

Exercises

 $\frac{1}{w}$

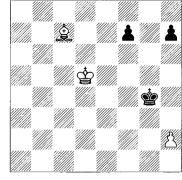


Choose between 58 \$\displayse\$ and 58 \$\mathbb{Z}\$e7+.



How should the game end?

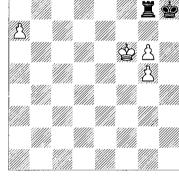
W



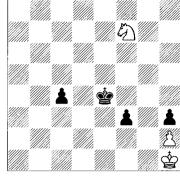
5 *B*

6 *W*

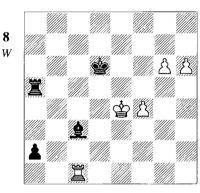
White's bishop is the 'right' one for his rook's pawn, and it seems that Black cannot build a fortress. Time to resign?



Discover a safety box.



Can the knight deal with both the passed pawns?



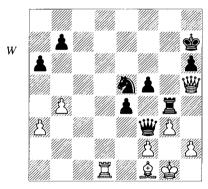
White will inevitably lose his rook. Is this the end of the story?

14 Perpetual Check and Fortresses

Perpetual Check and Perpetual Attack

Another useful method for saving a draw is threefold repetition of position. When this is forced by chasing the king, we call it perpetual check. This can occur either because the king cannot avoid the checks at all, or because avoiding them leads to unpleasant consequences. The king is not the only piece that can be disturbed for eternity; this can happen to any other piece, such as a queen that has strayed too far into enemy territory. In that case we speak about perpetual attack, or a positional draw.

Perpetual check can be the logical result of an attack on the king in an equal position, but it is also a useful idea for saving a dubious or lost position:



Conquest – Edouard European Union Ch, Liverpool 2008

White's position looks dreadful: his pieces seem uncoordinated, while Black already has serious threats against the white king, including 38... \(\mathbb{Z} \) xg3+. However, Conquest found a way to force a perpetual:

38 \$ 21

The only way – White deflects Black's queen from its defence of the f5-pawn. White would

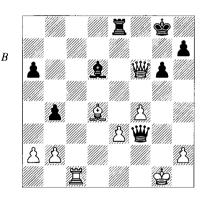
lose material after 38 豐e8? e3 39 fxe3 豐xe3+40 \$\pm\$h1 豐f3+41 \$\pm\$g1 豐xd1, when it is already too late for a perpetual: 42 豐e7+\$\pm\$g6 43 豐e6+\$\pm\$h5 44 豐xe5 豐d4+45 豐xd4 \$\pm\$xd4 \$\pm\$xd4 and Black wins.

38... 響xe2 39 響xf5+ 罩g6 40 罩c1

40...∳c6

41 營f7+ 黨g7 42 營f5+ 含g8 43 營c8+ 含f7 44 營d7+ 含g6

44... 當f6 45 營d6+ doesn't change anything. 45 營e6+ 當h7 ½-½



Valdes – H. Gonzalez Cuba 2001

This example is more complicated. It looks as if Black is facing inevitable mate. The queen and bishop are lined up on the long diagonal, and if 1... ₩g4+ White can simply answer 2 ★f2 and the checks are over. If Black wants to do something, he must first disrupt the threat against his king.

1...**≜e**5!

Deflection and interference. This subtle move breaks White's perfect coordination.

2 fve

White sacrifices his queen, but this is only sufficient for a draw. Other moves:

- a) 2 &xe5 allows an immediate perpetual by 2... wxe3+3 常g2 we2+.
- b) 2 營c6 leads to a drawn rook endgame after 2... 營xc6 3 黨xc6 食xd4 4 exd4 黨e2.

2...豐g4+ 3 會f2

3 含h1 營e4+=.

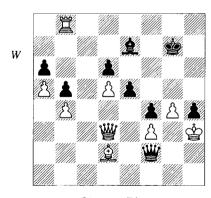
3... \(\bar{\pi} \) f8 4 \(\bar{\pi} \) c7 \(\bar{\pi} \) xf6+ 5 exf6

Black has won the white queen thanks to the pin, but is still the weaker side. Therefore he forces a draw:

5...營h4+6含f1營h3+7含e1營h4+8含d1 營g4+9含c2

9 會d2 竇g2+ 10 曾d3 營f1+=. 9... 營e2+ ½-½

It is naturally possible to use several saving ideas together:



Otero – Rivera Cuba 2002

White needs to sacrifice something or throw in the towel:

1 **≜**xf4!

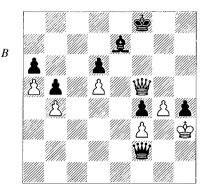
Not 1 鱼e1? 豐xe1 2 會h2 h3 3 豐c2 豐g3+ 4 會h1 豐xf3+ 5 會h2 豐g3+ 6 會h1 豐e1+ 7 會h2 f3, which is hopeless for White, while 1 罩g8+?

\$xg8 2 &xf4 gives Black the additional option 2...\$g7, which, in fact, wins.

1...exf4 2 罩g8+! 當xg8 3 瀏g6+ 當f8

3... 會h8? may even lose after 4 響e8+ 會g7 5 響xe7+ 會g8 6 響g5+ 會f8 7 響xf4+.

4 **營f5+**(D)



4...**ġ**g7

In case of 4... \$\delta 8\$ White gives perpetual check on the light squares – the opposite colour from Black's bishop. 5 \$\delta c8 + \delta f7 (5... \$\delta d8 6\$ \$\delta 6+ \delta f8 7 \$\delta f5+ =) 6 \$\delta f5+ \delta 87 \$\delta c8+ =.

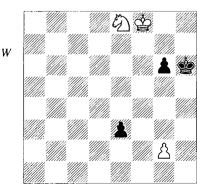
After the text-move, it looks as if White's defensive resources are exhausted. However, he has one final idea:

5 竇g5+!! 會f7

Since 5... 2 xg5 is stalemate!

6 当h5+ 含f8 7 当f5+ 1/2-1/2

The queen is such a powerful piece that in many cases it can deliver perpetual check all on its own, without the support of any other pieces. But other pieces can sometimes perform the same feat with only a little assistance:



G. Zakhodiakin Shakhmaty v SSSR, 1981

1 2 d6

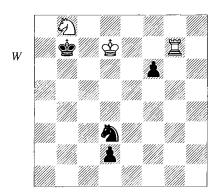
Black will queen, but White saves himself with a remarkably simple and effective construction:

1...e2 2 包f7+ \$h5 3 包e5 e1 4 g4+ \$h6 Both 4...\$h4 5 包f3+ and 4...\$g5 5 包f3+ lose the queen to a fork.

5 ②f7+ \$h7 6 ②g5+

With a draw.

A rook and a knight may also create a drawing mechanism if they are well coordinated. This was well explained by Nimzowitsch:



A. Nimzowitsch (version) *Rigaer Nachrichten*, 1923

1 \$e6+ \$b6

1...\$xb8 2 \$\boxed{\boxed}g\$1 \$\bar{Q}\$e1 3 \$\boxed{\boxed}g\$8+ \$\boxed{\boxed}c\$7 4 \$\boxed{\boxed}g\$7+ \$\boxed{\boxed}c\$6 5 \$\boxed{\boxed}d\$7 =.

2 国g1 包e1 3 国g4! d1豐

Now that Black has promoted, White must act with checks.

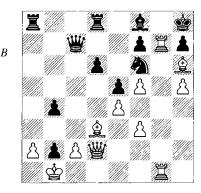
4 罩b4+ 含a5

Now the classical drawing mechanism is created. The excellent position of White's king helps him use the same motifs on the c-file: 4...\$c5 5 2a6+\$c6 6 2b8+\$c7 7 2a6+\$c8?? 8 <math>2b8#.

5 ②c6+ �a6 6 ②b8+

Remember this pattern. It may help you save a lot of points. I myself saved half a point by using the mechanism in a game against GM Atanas Kolev (La Roda rapid 2001).

Sometimes there is nothing objectively better than taking a draw by perpetual check. But if we have the draw 'in hand', so to speak, then there is no harm in trying a final winning chance. If the opponent sees through the idea, then so be it, we must then take the draw.



Lopez Martinez – G. Guseinov European Ch, Warsaw 2005

The position is double-edged and Black defends excellently:

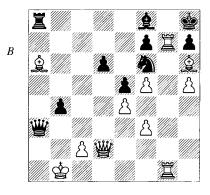
24... **国xa2!**

24... **当**a7? loses to 25 **a**c4 d5 26 exd5 **a**c5 27 **y**g5 with the idea 28 **x**h7+.

25 \$xa2

25...豐a7+ 26 曾xb2 豐a3+ 27 曾b1 冨a8 28 皇a6!? (D)

28 \(\begin{aligned}
& g8+ is perpetual again, but why not give our opponent a chance to go wrong? \end{aligned}



28...**營xa**6!

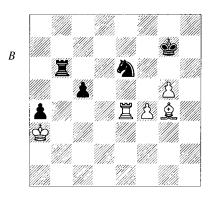
Guseinov is alert. The innocuous-looking bishop on a6 was heavily laced with poison: 28... 基xa6? 29 基g8+ 全xg8 30 基xg8+ 全xg8 31 豐g5+ 全h8 and now White triumphs using the blocking/deflection idea 32 全g7+! 全xg7 (or 32... 全g8 33 全f6+) 33 營d8+ +-.

29 罩g8+! 公xg8 30 罩xg8+ 含xg8 31 খg5+ 1/2-1/2

Having avoided the trap, Black had earned his half-point.

Fortresses and Insufficient Material

Another important defensive theme is liquidation to a position where one can easily defend by passive means despite a large material disadvantage. There are two distinct cases: 'fortress' positions, where the opponent cannot improve his position due to a blockade or other positional factors, and the simpler case of the opponent being left without sufficient material to force checkmate.



Galojan – Tsiganova European Women's Ch, Plovdiv 2008

Pawn exchanges can be very effective in endgames. Pawns may become queens, so they are especially dangerous and should sometimes be destroyed even at the cost of a piece. In the diagram, the lazy option for Black would be to retreat her knight, but this would most probably lead to defeat (White has two connected, well-advanced and well-supported passed pawns). It is far better to play actively, and seize the opportunity to destroy White's pawns.

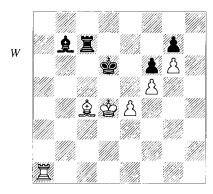
63...②xf4!

 careful the whole time to avoid blundering into one of the many lost positions. The text-move has the idea of exchanging rooks too.

64 \(\bar{a}\) xf4 \(\bar{a}\) b4! 65 \(\bar{a}\) xb4 \(\cong \bar{b}\) 4+ 66 \(\bar{c}\) xb4 \(\bar{c}\) 2-\(\bar{a}\) 2-\(\bar{a}\)

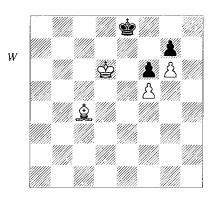
White has a bishop more, but the pawns have left the board.

There are many possible fortresses in our game, but I would like to show you one that is not very common.



Vasilev – Todorov Bulgarian Team Ch, Sunny Beach 2007

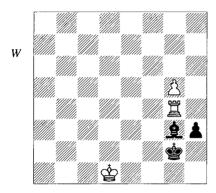
White was aiming for this position, and hoped to exchange all the pieces after 54 罩a7 (followed by 55 兔d5). However, when this position actually arose, he realized what Black had in store for him: 54...②xe4!! with the idea 55 罩xc7 含xc7 56 含xe4 and Black's king goes to f8: 56...含d6 57 含d4 含e7 58 含c5 含f8 59 含d6 含e8 (D).



White has an extra bishop, but cannot break the fortress. Black simply plays …曾f8-e8-f8, and holds the draw.

In the game he proceeded with 54 \(\mathbb{L}a2 \) \(\mathbb{L}xe4, \) but without his extra pawn could not make progress and the game was later drawn.

Some ways in which games can be saved are truly miraculous, and it is no surprise that fortresses and positional draws are very popular amongst endgame study composers.



G. Zakhodiakin *Shakhmaty v SSSR*, 1982

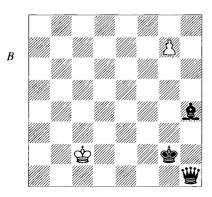
White is an exchange up, but his rook is impotent to stop the black h-pawn, which will clearly promote well before White's g-pawn. Normal means will not suffice to save White.

1 g6 h2 2 \(\mathbb{H}\)h4!

Not 2 g7? h1 + 3 &c2 h7+ 4 &d2 g8
-+. The text-move appears only to delay the hpawn's promotion by one move, but there is a
cunning point behind luring the bishop to h4.

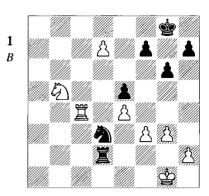
2... xh4 3 g7 h1營+ 4 含c2 (D)

The king must move to precisely this square, where neither black piece can check it.

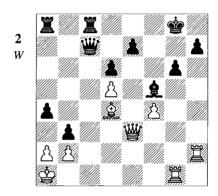


Black is a queen and bishop ahead, and is to move, but cannot avoid a draw.

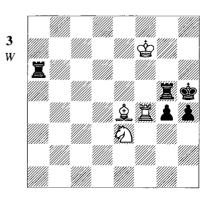
Exercises



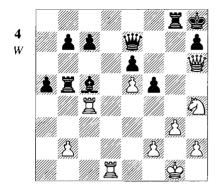
If you have read the chapter carefully, this should be easy.



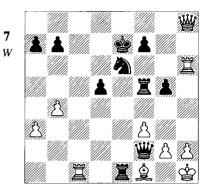
In the race to attack, and White is lagging far behind. It is time to find a safe option?



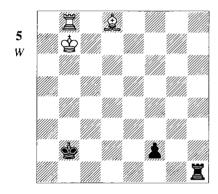
How can White annihilate Black's dangerous pawns?



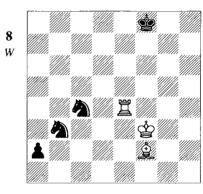
White is a pawn down, and needs to hurry before his opponent consolidates.



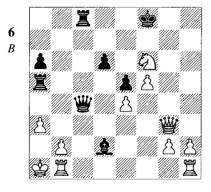
Be very precise when giving perpetual check!



A rook is also capable of glorious deeds.



Black will queen, but two knights are not sufficient to give mate. So...



Black is three pawns down, but is very active...

Part 2: Advanced Tactics

The second part of the book features the most typical ways to attack a castled king. A king is well protected in its castled position, with a row of pawns in front and normally with some pieces close at hand (normally a rook and a knight, and often a bishop). However, there are also many possible plans for attacking this set-up. If you study these plans carefully, and assess at the board which one is most appropriate under the specific circumstances, you will often be able to carry out successful attacks.

The most sensitive points in the castled position are those which are only covered by the king, or perhaps only by one other piece. These points might be blown apart with the help of various sacrifices, or targeted by a variety of other attacking manoeuvres and mechanisms.

Never forget that we need to have a local superiority of forces if we want to succeed in our mating plans. And as always, control of the centre is important if we are to supply additional forces and prevent our opponent from bringing over defensive forces to guard the king. But most of all, we need to be quick, and to use every move efficiently and to gain time whenever possible.

We shall be taking a particularly close look at attacks with opposite-coloured bishops. While pure opposite-bishop endings tend to be drawish, in an attack and defence situation, the difference in the value of these minor pieces can prove decisive. The better bishop often wins since the attack can be conducted on the squares of its colour, on which its counterpart is impotent.

Open files are another key ingredient. Rooks are the only pieces that do not need to be centralized to show their full potential; all they need are open files. These chess highways provide good communication between the attacking forces, and assure the success of many tactical operations.

Last, but not least – the trapping of pieces, both physical and virtual (i.e. the excluding of a piece) may also bring us the necessary superiority of forces. A piece that is shut out of play can be compared to a pinned, overloaded, or blocked piece. None of these pieces can act with their full potential, and so may become vulnerable and be lost themselves, or may cause other misfortunes thanks to their passivity.

In the last three chapters, strategy and tactics become merged into one intertwined whole, and this is very normal for such a complicated game as chess.

15 f7: Weak by Presumption

When we observe the initial position of a chess game, one thing inevitably makes an impression. There is one square that is protected only by the king, a square so vulnerable that even novices notice that it is possible to give mate on this square after just a few moves. We are of course talking about the f7-square ¹.

We shall consider several typical situations in which an attack against this fragile point may be feasible:

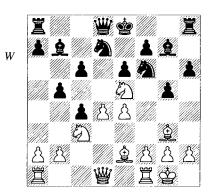
- 1) An explosive early sacrifice before castling.
 - 2) After castling, with no rook on f8.
- 3) After castling, with the f7-pawn protected by the rook.
- 4) Step-by-step attack against the weak f7-square.

Explosive early sacrifice before castling

As we have already noted, f7 is the most vulnerable square in the initial position, so there is ample scope for early sacrifices on this square. Whole opening plans are based on an early sacrifice on f7, such as the Petroff Defence line 1 e4 e5 2 \$\angle\$ f3 \$\angle\$ f6 3 \$\angle\$ xe5 d6 4 ②xf7!?!, when for the sacrificed knight White earns two pawns, and a long-term attack based on the exposed position of the black king. This was seen, for instance, in the game Topalov-Kramnik, Linares 1999. In general one of the best players in our time, Veselin Topalov is a great advocate of early sacrifices on f7. Using the same method he managed to defeat his old adversary Kramnik in one of the best games of the last decade:

Topalov – Kramnik Wijk aan Zee 2008

1 d4 d5 2 c4 c6 3 🖺 f3 🖺 f6 4 🖺 c3 e6 5 🚉 g5 h6 6 🖺 h4 dxc4 7 e4 g5 8 🚊 g3 b5 9 🚊 e2 🚊 b7 10 0-0 🖺 bd7 11 🖺 e5 🚊 g7 (D)



12 ②xf7!?!

The second exclamation mark is for the courage to give up a piece against a world-class player at such an early stage of the game. This was Ivan Cheparinov's deep novelty, prepared in 2005 for possible use in the 2006 world championship match. White gets only one pawn for the piece, but develops a strong initiative against the opponent's king. Topalov went on to win a flashy game, and the reader can find annotations in many sources in case he is not already familiar with this game.

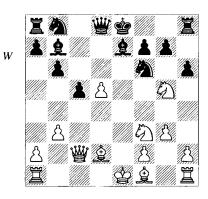
Topalov – Anand Sofia 2005

Or the f2-square in White's position. For ease of reference, we shall in our general discussions refer to the f7-square, but naturally the reader should not assume that White's f2-square is any safer against the ideas we shall present!

After 11...h6 both 12 ②xf7 and 12 ③xe6 blow Black's position apart in a similar way to the game continuation.

11...0-0 was given by Topalov as safer, when White can reply 12 0-0-0 with the idea 13 皇d3.

12 d5 exd5 13 cxd5 h6 (D)



14 ②xf7! \$\disp\xf7 15 0-0-0

White has a strong initiative against Black's king. He has at his disposal various threats, such as 16 2e5+ and 16 d6 followed by 2c4+, and can use both his rooks in the attack. One very important feature of the position is that after the demolition of the black pawn on f7, a whole complex of light squares has become desperately weak.

15... **≜**d6 16 **۞**h4 **≜**c8 17 **□**e1 **⊘**a6 18 **□**e6 **⊘**b4

18...②c7 19 營g6+ 全g8 20 ②f5 皇f8 21 皇c4 underlines the light-square weaknesses in Black's camp.

19 &xb4 cxb4 20 &c4 b5

Black had other possible defences, such as 20...\$\delta f8\$ and 20...\$\delta g8\$, which is aimed against 21 \$\delta g6\$, which will be met by 21...\$\delta 5!\$. However, the evaluation of the position remains the same: White has a strong attack and any mistake from Black's side will be cruelly punished.

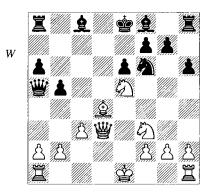
21 &xb5 &e7?

And here it comes. Better was 21...\$\\$g8!?, meeting 22 \Qbar g6 with 22...h5!?. Topalov proposed 22 \&c4 or 22 \Bar d1 in reply.

22 2 g6!? 2 xd5

23 罩xe7+?!

This was White's only flaw in his superb attack. Although he nevertheless won later, we shall leave the game at this point, as it would distract from the main focus of our discussion here. The subtle 23 罩e5 兔b7 24 豐f5+ 全g8 25 兔c4 would have led to an instant win, and is an ideal illustration of the ideas behind the assault on f7.



Alsina Leal – Fluvia Poyatos Barcelona 2008

The weakness of the light squares can also be highlighted by a sacrifice on a square other than f7. In this case White deflects the f7-pawn, and can destroy it later.

17 2 g6!

This is practically the same idea as the sacrifice on f7; White just captures the pawn in an unusual way.

17...fxg6 18 營xg6+ 全e7 19 包e5 營c7 20 包f7 罩g8 21 皂e5 營c6 22 0-0-0

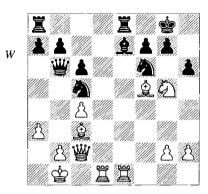
As a result of the sacrifice, Black's king has had to stay in the centre under threats from all the white pieces. It is no wonder that it did not survive for too long.

22... ②d5 23 罩xd5 豐xd5 24 罩d1 兔b7 25 罩xd5 兔xd5 26 ②xh6 罩h8 27 豐f7+ \$\pm\$d8 28 豐c7+ \$\pm\$e8 29 ②f7 1-0

After castling, with no rook on f8

When Black castles kingside, his rook immediately covers the f7-pawn. However, for various reasons the rook may move from f8, possibly to contest an open file, or with some other strategic aim in mind, such as freeing f8 for a knight or bishop. However well motivated this may be, it does leave f7 highly sensitive once again, and various mating mechanisms may then work.

One typical idea is to play **h7+ followed** by the attacker first cuts off the king's way back to his safe squares g8 and h8, and attacks it on the f- and e-files. Naturally, this is most likely to be effective when the e- and f-files are open and in your control.



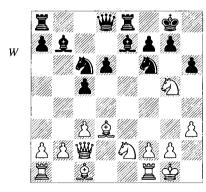
Åkesson – C. van Oosterom Wijk aan Zee 2007

21 **拿h7+ 會f8**

Since 21...\$\delta h8 22 \Quantum xf7# is instant mate.

25 兔xf6 gxf6 26 營g8# (1-0)

The dark-squared bishop can also be used in the action.



L. Dominguez - R. Perez Cuban Ch 2003

15 臭h7+ 含f8 16 ②xf7!! 含xf7 17 豐g6+ **\$f8 18 &xh6! gxh6**

18...包h5 19 包f4! 盒f6 20 包xh5 +-.

19 2 f4

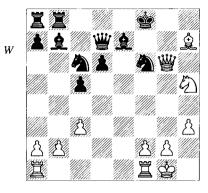
White's knight will also play an active role. Note that Black's main troops are far away on

the queenside and White has a superiority of attacking forces on the kingside.

19... gd7 20 gxh6+

20 包h5 is also good.

20...會f7 21 曾g6+ 曾f8 22 公h5 罩eb8 (D)



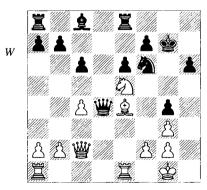
23 **基ae1**

23 營h6+ 含e8 (23...含f7 24 臭g6+ 含e6 25 ②f4+ 含e5 26 豐g5+ mates) 24 夏f5 豐c7 (or 24...豐xf5 25 包g7+) 25 包g7+ 當f8 26 包e6++. 23...①xh7 24 豐xh7 包e5

24... **当**c8 25 **以**xe7 **以**xe7 26 **以**e1.

25 f4 皇f6 26 營h6+ 皇g7 27 fxe5+ 含g8 28 ②f6+ 1-0

As in the case of a sacrifice on f7 against an uncastled king, the attacker can enter on other squares around the king in order to reach f7:

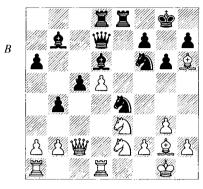


Karthikeyan – Ragger World Junior Ch, Gaziantep 2008

18 🙎 g6!

Since the capture on g6 leads to forced mate, and 18... If 8 is met by 19 2xf7 with similar ideas, Black gave his queen away:

The next example is a famous one, where a series of sacrifices drags the king out into the centre.

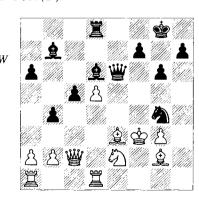


Cifuentes – Zviagintsev Wijk aan Zee 1995

24... 2xf2! 25 \$xf2 \$\mathbb{Z}\$xe3! 26 \$\mathbb{L}\$xe3

26 \$\delta \text{e3} \delta \delta \delta + 27 \$\delta \delta \delta \text{xh6} gives Black a pawn for an exchange and an overwhelming advantage on the dark squares. Therefore, White might as well try keeping the sacrificed rook, even though his king will now be in great danger.

26... ②g4+ 27 曾f3 ②xh2+ 28 曾f2 ②g4+ 29 曾f3 豐e6! (D)



Black's attack is unstoppable.

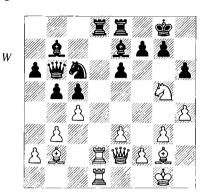
30 **≜**f4

Everything else is equally hopeless: 30 營e4 營xe4+31 含xe4 罩e8+; 30 營d2? 罩e8; 30 全c1 h5! (threatening ... 全xd5+ and ... 罩e8) 31 ②f4 全xf4 32 gxf4 (or 32 全xf4 罩xd5, mating) 32... 罩xd5 33 含g3 h4+34 含xh4 ②e3, mating. 30...**ℤe**8

30....**\$**xf4 31 **₩**e4!.

31 營c4 營e3+ 32 兔xe3 鼍xe3+ 33 含xg4 兔c8+ 34 含g5 h6+! 35 含xh6 鼍e5 0-1

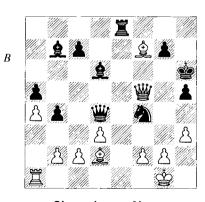
The sacrifice on f7 can be a prelude of a total annihilation of the pawns in front of the king:



Magalashvili – A. Aleksandrov European Ch, Plovdiv 2008

23 公xf7! 含xf7 24 豐h5+ g6 25 豐xh6 罩f8 26 含e4 1-0

Or it might clear the road for all the attacking pieces:



Cheparinov – Navara
European Team Ch, Khersonisos 2007

27... 豐xf2+! 28 曾xf2 罩e2+ 29 曾g1 29 曾f1 皇xg2+ 30 曾g1 罩xd2 -+.

29... \(\beta\)xg2+?!

30 含f1 罩xd2 31 息g8?

After 31 h4! Black has no more than a draw.
31... 全g2+ 32 全e1 罩e2+ 33 全d1 全f3 34

ッ h7+ 會g5 35 星a2

35 豐xg7+ 曾h4 36 豐f6+ 曾xh3 37 曾c1 罩e1+ 38 曾d2 罩xa1 -+.

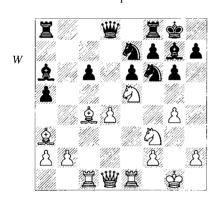
35... ℤh2+ 36 �e1

36 含c1 ②xd3+ (36...②e2+ 37 含d2 ②d4+ 38 含e3 ②e5 -+) 37 cxd3 ②f4+ 38 含b1 罩h1+ 39 含c2 罩c1+ 40 含b3 ②d1#.

36...5)xd3+! 0-1

After castling, with the f7-pawn protected by the rook

The sacrifice is often made when the attacker has a bishop trained on the e6-square. In this case, the defender's extra option of recapturing with his rook may not be a good solution, since the rook is liable to be pinned:



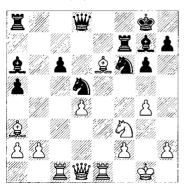
Smirin – Smyslov USSR Ch. Moscow 1988

22 夕xf7! 罩xf7

W

In this case, there is no choice, and Black must take with the rook.

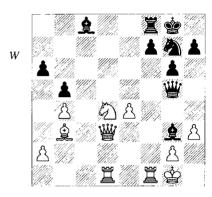
23 &xe6 ②ed5 (D)



Black opens a line for his queen's rook to defend its colleague on f7.

24 夕e5 罩a7 25 罩xc6

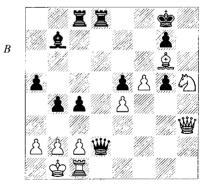
White already has two pawns for a piece, and he will certainly gain at least an exchange. In addition he is not in a hurry and may choose the best moment to recoup his material investment.



Leko – Mamedyarov Amber Blindfold, Nice 2008

30 罩xf7! 罩xf7 31 勺f3 豐e7 32 豐d8+ 豐f8 33 勺g5 1-0

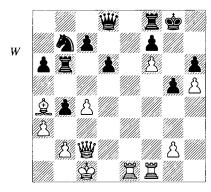
The typical sacrifice can be very effective in conjunction with a weak back rank:



Westin – Fridriksson Sweden 1973

In following example White managed to give an extra impetus to his far-advanced pawn. But

first, he needed to crack the f7-point, and he found an original way to do so.



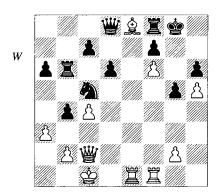
Maksimenko – Komandini Italy 2003

1 **Qe8! ②c5** (D)

1... Ξ xe8 does not work due to the drastic 2 Ψ g6+!! fxg6 3 f7+.

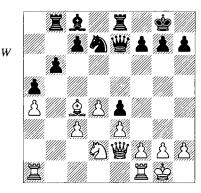
1...\$\delta\$8 allows a decisive attack on the vulnerable square: 2 \$\mathbb{I}\$e7 bxa3 (2...\$\mathbb{I}\$xe8 3 \$\mathbb{I}\$xf7 +-) 3 \$\mathbb{L}\$xf7 axb2+ (3...a2 4 \$\mathre{C}\$d2 +-) 4 \$\mathre{C}\$b1 +-.

Informator gives in addition the line 1... wees 2 Zixe8 Zixe8 3 was Zie4 4 wd7, where White also breaks through to the f7-square thanks to the manoeuvre we8+ and wf8.



Step-by-step attack against the weak f7-square

If we lack a suitable way to smash through with a direct attack, we need to bring up reinforcements first. The most conventional way is to open a file for the rooks.



Moiseev - Luchinkin Moscow Ch 1979

17 f3!

White first opens a line of attack for his rooks against f7.

17...exf3 18 \(\mathbb{\text{\psi}}\) xf3 \(\overline{\text{\psi}}\) f6

The knight is a temporary obstacle, and can be easily removed:

Black has managed to bring a bishop over to protect f7. However, he lacks space, and as a result will not be able to involve all his forces in the defence. Meanwhile, White can use every single unit in his army.

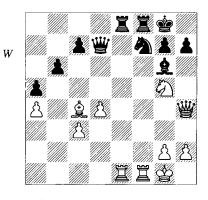
21 e5 2 d7 22 2 e4 2 g6 23 2 g5

Almost all the white troops have amassed in their siege of the weak point.

23...≌f8 24 e6 ᡚe5

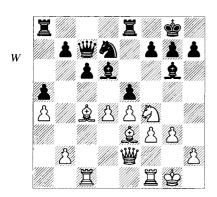
24...分f6 is better, but still insufficient: 25 公xf7 &xf7 26 exf7+ 當h8 27 墨ae1 wins for White.

25 exf7+ 公xf7 26 罩ae1 豐d7 27 豐h4 罩be8 (D)



And after pinning down Black's forces, White delivers the final blow:

28 罩xf7! 罩xf7 29 鱼xf7+ 鱼xf7 30 豐xh7+ 含f8 31 罩f1 1-0



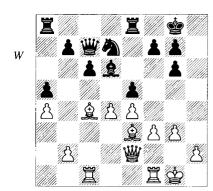
Topalov – Bu Xiangzhi Sofia 2008

Black has just played 20...e6-e5?, afraid that his bishop on g6 will be excluded from the game. However, this was the lesser evil, since after his actual move, Black has greater problems with f7-square.

21 ②xg6

A decision based on concrete considerations. Although the bishop was passive, it was an important defender of f7.

21...hxg6 (D)



22 f4

White clears the road for his major pieces. The f1-rook is ready to attack the f7-square.

22...exd4 23 &xd4 b6?

24 f5 g5

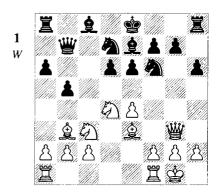
Black tries to keep the f-file closed at any rate. However, the white queen now has free access to h5, and thus the f7-square.

25 營h5 包f6

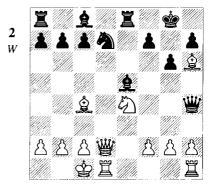
Or 25...②e5 26 f6 g6 27 營h6 負f8 28 兔xe5 followed by 營xg6+.

26 全xf6 gxf6 27 營g6+ 全f8 28 營xf6 全e5 29 營xg5 營e7 30 f6 全d4+ 31 罩f2 1-0

Exercises

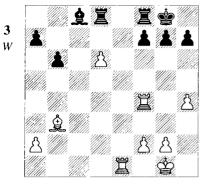


Black is counting on 13 豐xg7 罩g8. Does White have anything better?

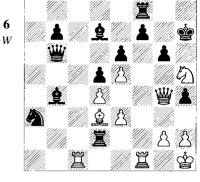


This is an easy nut to crack.

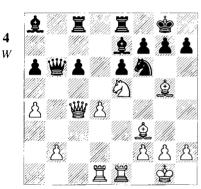
6



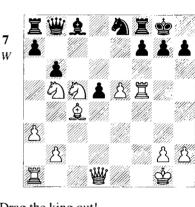
White's passed pawn looks doomed. Is it?



How can White burn down his opponent's house?

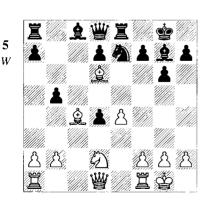


This combination often occurs in positions with an isolated queen's pawn.

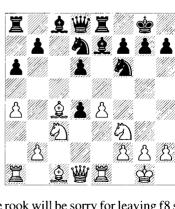


Drag the king out!

W



Our focus should be on one particular pawn...

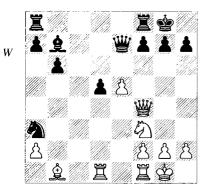


The rook will be sorry for leaving f8 so early.

16 The Vulnerable Rook's Pawn

Once the king has castled on the kingside, the most vulnerable spot in his camp becomes the rook's pawn on h7 (or h2 in the case of White). It is the furthest from the rest of the forces, and the hardest to protect. The rook has abandoned it, and in many cases it is only the king who keeps an eye on this pawn. Often it is also guarded by the knight on f6, but this piece is more exposed to attack. It can frequently be removed by an attack by a pawn, or else pinned, exchanged, or even annihilated by a sacrifice.

The attacker has at his disposal various attacking mechanisms. **Queen and knight** can form a highly potent attacking team, and there are a variety of ways by which they can drag a king out from behind its pawn-shield:



M. Makarov – Volzhin Russian Team Ch. Moscow 1994

After White's standard 'Greek Gift' bishop sacrifice, the fate of the game is in the hands of White's queen and knight.

19 &xh7+! \$\text{\$\text{\$\frac{1}{20}}\$} @g5+ \$\text{\$\frac{1}{20}}\$}

Now the king lacks defenders, but 20... \$\pm\$g8? 21 \$\pm\$h4 followed by \$\pm\$h7+ and \$\pm\$h8# is mate.

21 h4

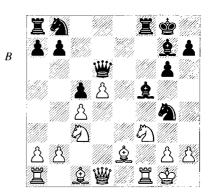
The h-pawn supports the white knight and will play a role as an attacking unit in its own right.

21...f6?

Now White has a forced mate. A critical line runs 21... ②c4 22 罩fel 罩h8 23 罩d3 f6 24 g4 \$\pmathbf{c}\$h6 25 ②e6+ \$\pmathbf{c}\$h7 26 exf6 營xf6 27 營c7 罩ae8 28 罩f3 罩xe6 29 罩xf6 罩xel+ 30 \$\pmathbf{c}\$g2 \$\pmathbf{c}\$a8 31 營f7, when the mate threat forces Black to give up material. He is fighting for a draw after 31...d4+ 32 f3 \$\pmathbf{c}\$xf3+ 33 \$\pmathbf{c}\$xf3 \$\pmathbf{c}\$e5 34 \$\pmathbf{c}\$h5+ \$\pmathbf{c}\$g8 35 \$\pmathbf{c}\$f8+ \$\pmax\$xf8 36 \$\pmathbf{c}\$xh8+ \$\pmathbf{c}\$f7.

22 h5+ 含h6 23 当f5

Dragging the king out into the open.



Ponce – Ortiz Cuba 2002

1...**≜c2**!

Black needs to annihilate the knight on f3 and he opens a pathway for the demolition crew (in the form of the f8-rook) with gain of tempo.

2 **對xc2**

Or: 2 🖾 b5 & xd1 3 🖾 xd6 & xe2 -+; 2 \ e1 is similar: 2... & d4+ 3 \ e1 \ axf3 -+.

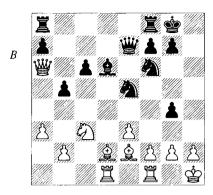
2... 🖺 xf3! 3 g3

3 罩xf3 豐xh2+4 曾f1 豐h1#.

The rook is intent on demolishing White's defences and securing its queen's access to deliver mate on h2.

4 \$h1 罩g1+! 0-1

Lining up the **queen and bishop** to attack the rook's pawn is especially attractive when the opponent's king is in the corner square:

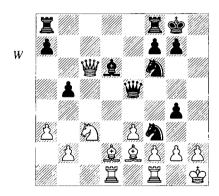


Volkov – Akopian Russian Team Ch. Sochi 2005

18...分f3! 19 豐xc6

19 gxf3 gxf3 20 兔xf3 營e5 is Black's main point, when mate is inevitable. Note that his opponent cannot hinder or block the key diagonal.

19...曾e5 (D)



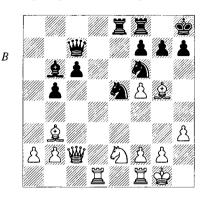
20 **營xd6**

20 g3 does not suffice, since the queen finds a good location by 20... \$\mathbb{\text{\mathbb{H}}}\$h5. After 21 \$\mathbb{\text{\mathbb{L}}}\$xf3 gxf3, the f6-knight can come into play by ... \$\mathbb{\text{\mathbb{L}}}\$g4, and when White meets this threat with h4, Black will secure victory by ... \$\mathbb{\text{\mathbb{L}}}\$e7. The same motifs occurs in other lines too.

20... **営xd6 21 gxf3**

White has only two minor pieces for the queen, and went on to lose.

From what we have already seen, one might think that the simplest solution is to advance the pawn one square by playing ...h6. In some situations this is indeed essential, and a good way to sidestep the most dangerous threats. But it is certainly no panacea, and in many cases the pawn is exposed to a sacrifice, or leaves a very sore point on g6. Here is a model example of how the g6-square can be exploited:



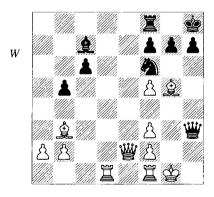
Staniszewski – A. Grigoryan Warsaw 2008

Black can mobilize his queen and bishop with gain of tempo by using a pin:

23...②f3+! 24 gxf3 \(\) xe2!

Removing an important defender.

25 豐xe2 豐g3+ 26 曾h1 豐xh3+ 27 曾g1 &c7 (D)



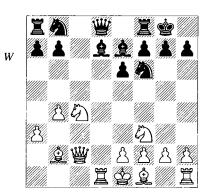
Black's queen and bishop work together in perfect harmony.

28 f4 2 g4 0-1

Queen and rook constitute a lot of firepower that works well on the rook's file. If the attacking side has not yet castled, or has castled on the opposite wing, then it may be quite straightforward to bring a rook into the assault.

V. Georgiev - Kurajica Solin 2007

1 d4 \$\angle f6 2 c4 e6 3 \$\angle f3 \text{\mathemath\$\mathbb{\mathemath}\$}\$ d5 5



Black has not handled the opening very successfully, and White now starts an attack against h7.

12 2 g5!

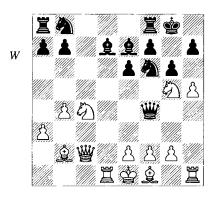
For the moment the threat is to exchange the knight, so Black's next move is forced:

12...g6

However, this advance provides a point of contact which allows White to open the h-file.

13 h4!

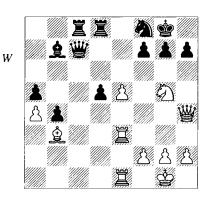
Sometimes it is useful to postpone castling! 13... **曾c7 14 h5 曾f4** (D)



White has a decisive advantage of forces on the kingside. The position must be opened

15 ②xh7! ②xh7 16 hxg6 ②f6 17 g7 f5 18 gxf8豐+ 當xf8 19 豐xf5 exf5 20 罩h8+ 包g8 21 e3 &e6 22 De5 a6 23 &c4 &xc4 24 Dxc4 b5 25 9 b6 1-0

The 幽+罩 mechanism can also be used after same-side castling with the help of the rooklift:

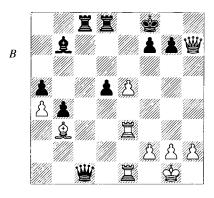


Keres - Fine Ostend 1937

The rook reaches the h-file in front of its pawns:

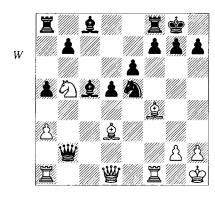
24 公xh7! 公xh7 25 罩h3 豐c1

A desperate attempt to deflect White's forces. However, White has achieved enough already. 26 豐xh7+ 含f8 27 罩e3 (D)



27...d4 28 当h8+ 含e7 29 当xg7 罩f8 30 当f6+ **\$e8 31 e6 1-0**

The double bishop sacrifice is one of the best-known ways to demolish a castled position. Although it is quite rare for the double sacrifice to occur in practice, it is an important method that is in the background in many types of position – one must be familiar with the idea to attack or defend these positions successfully. The first example of it was created by Emanuel Lasker. It has features in common with the 豐+罩 attacks we have just seen, but the difference is that the stronger side sacrifices two bishops first, in order to open both the g- and the h-files for the major pieces. Here is a recent example:



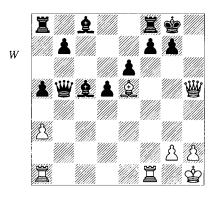
Sutovsky – Vavrak European Ch, Plovdiv 2008

20 ≜xh7+!

White begins destroying the black king's fortifications.

20... 曾xh7 21 豐h5+ 曾g8 22 臭xe5 豐xb5 (D)

Or 22... 豐c2 23 罩fc1 豐f2 24 食xg7 含xg7 25 豐g5+ 含h8 26 罩c3 e5 27 g4 兔e3 28 罩xe3 食xg4 29 豐h6+ 含g8 30 罩g1.



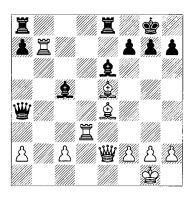
23 \(\hat{Q} xg7!

The second sacrifice, which cannot be accepted due to **曾g5+** followed by a rook-lift on third, fourth or sixth rank.

With or without the bishop, White will decisively use the open file.

In the following example White uses the b7-rook as a decisive reinforcement:

20 &xh7+! 曾f8

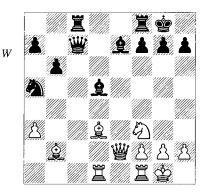


Miroshnichenko – Gunnarsson European Ch, Ohrid 2001

21 皇xg7+! 含xg7 22 營e5+ 1-0

In view of 22... 會h6 23 營f6+ 會xh7 24 罩h3+ 魚xh3 25 罩xf7+ or 22... 會xh7 23 營h5+ 會g7 24 罩g3+, when again the rook takes part in the assault since it prevents the ... 鱼g4 covering resource.

And here is an example by Garry Kasparov himself on a closely related theme:



Kasparov – Portisch Nikšić 1983

19 &xh7+ &xh7 20 \(\frac{1}{2}\)xd5 \(\frac{1}{2}\)g8 21 \(\frac{1}{2}\)xg7!! \(\frac{1}{2}\)xg7 22 \(\frac{1}{2}\)e5!

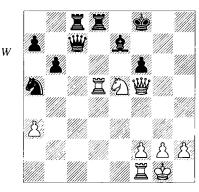
The point. White reaches the g- and h-files in an unconventional way. In some lines, the rook might be used via the seventh rank.

22...罩fd8

Or:

a) 22...f5 23 罩d7 豐c5 24 \bigcirc d3 and Black's bishop is lost.

- b) 22... **當**h8 23 **豐**g4+**含**f8 24 **豐**f5 f6 25 **罩**e1 **②**c6 (25... **豐**c1 26 **罩**dd1 +-) 26 **②**d7+**含**f7 27 **罩**xe7++-
- ■xe7+ +-.
 c) 22... 響c2 23 響g4+ 含h7 24 罩d3 罩c3 25 響h3+ and 26 罩xc3.
 - 23 **曾g4+ 會f8 24 曾f5 f6** (D)



25 @d7+!

equality.

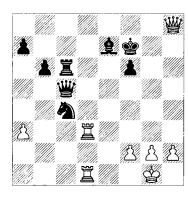
B

After 25 ②g6+, Black must avoid 25... \$\delta 8? 26 營h5 罩xd5 27 ②e5+ +-, while 25... \$\delta 7 26 ②f4 冨xd5 27 ③xd5 (27 營g6+? \$\delta h8 28 ③e6? 冨g5) 27... 營c5 28 ③xe7 leaves White a pawn up. The best defence is 25... \$\delta f7\$, when 26 ②e5+

\$\forall f8\$ returns to the game position, when White should continue 27 \$\infty\$ d7+!.

White has to be precise if he is to keep his raging attack going. Here 28 罩d3? allows 28... 豐xf2+!! 29 含xf2 (not 29 罩xf2?? 罩c1+) 29... 全c5+ 30 含g3 罩xh7, with approximate

28...含f7 29 罩d3 公c4 30 罩fd1! (D)

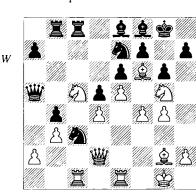


30...**∕**2e5?

 32 h4 may give White some advantage, while 31 \(\frac{1}{2}\)h3 also makes life very difficult for Black. However, this is far from being lost by force for

Black, which is the case after his actual choice. 31 營h7+ 含e6 32 營g8+ 含f5 33 g4+ 含f4 34 国d4+ 含f3 35 營b3+ 1-0

The pairing of **rook and bishop** can be very effective if the bishop is supporting a back-rank mate. In that case it makes sense to sacrifice on h7 in order to open the h-file.



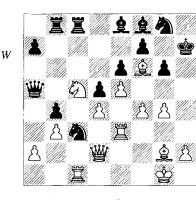
Svetushkin – Economescu Bucharest 2001

26 ②xh7! �xh7

26... $\Xi x c 5 27$ $\Theta x f 8$ $\Xi c 7 28 f 5 +-$ and white pieces reach the h-file as well.

27 **□e3 □g8** (D)

Black may also try to distract some of the white troops, but they will not be interested: 27... 基xc5 28 星h3+ 鱼h6 29 f5! 包e2+(29...包g8 30 豐xh6+! +-) 30 曾f2 包f4 31 星xh6+ 曾xh6 32 星xc5 +-.

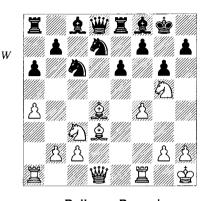


28 **国h3+ ⑤h6 29 f5 豐xa2** 29...**耳**xc5 30 豐xh6+! +-.

30 豐xh6+! 息xh6 31 g5 1-0 31...⑤e2+ 32 含h1 +-.

if they control the important diagonals:

Three minor pieces can successfully mate



Bojkov – Berend Differdange 2007

18 營h5! A decisive way to bring the most powerful

piece into the attack. The queen is poisoned due to a well-known mating pattern called Blackburne's Mate.

18...h6 18...gxh5 19 &xh7#.

18...gxn5 19 夏xn75 1**9 夏xg6**

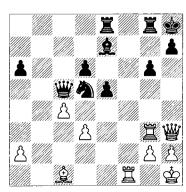
The rest is easy, as White has decisive superiority of force.

19... \(\hat{Q} \) \(\hat{x} \) \(

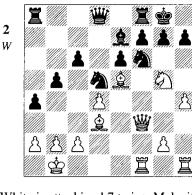
②f7+ **\$g7** 1-0

Exercises

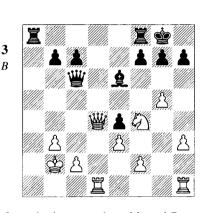
1 W



h7 is protected only by the king, but the rook will soon support it unless White acts now.



White is attacking h7 twice. Make it thrice.

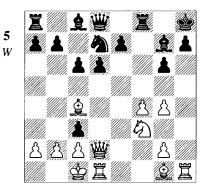


a2 can be just as vulnerable as h7.

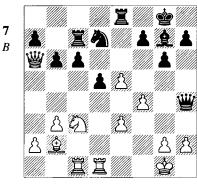


w

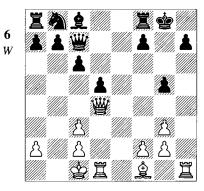
There's no need for a double bishop sacrifice here.



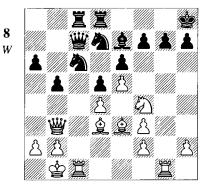
How should White crown his massive attack?



Break through to the most vulnerable square.



Two silent subtleties decide the game.



A disaster should befall Black here.

17 Attacking the Fianchetto

The fianchetto is a very common structure in chess. Many openings are based on it, such as the Dragon, Pirc, King's and Queen's Indian and Grünfeld Defences, Réti and Catalan Openings, etc. From its comfortable position on the long diagonal, the bishop exerts a great influence upon the centre. At the same time, the pawn-shield in front of the king looks stable, with the bishop neatly plugging the gaps left by the knight's pawn. However, if we manage to exchange the bishop, the whole complex of squares that it defends will become vulnerable. We have two standard plans to shatter the fianchetto:

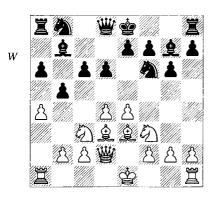
- 1. Exchange the fianchettoed bishop and attack the weak squares around it.
- 2. Advance the rook's pawn in order to open the h-file (or a-file), and use the open file to bring in the major pieces.

Exchange the Fianchettoed Bishop

Pogonina – Biriukov

Russian Under-26 Ch, Novokuznetsk 2007

1 e4 d6 2 d4 g6 3 公c3 &g7 4 &e3 c6 5 營d2 b5 6 &d3 a6 7 a4 &b7 8 公f3 公f6?! (D)



9 **臭h**6

This is a standard plan for these positions. White seeks to exploit the squares left weakened by the fianchetto.

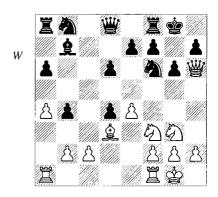
9...0-0 10 0-0 b4 11 🖒 e2

The knight is heading for g3 and the king-side.

11...c5 12 夕g3 臭xh6?

A bad decision, since the white queen is now too close to the enemy king. Sometimes it is the right decision to draw the queen to the edge of the board in this way in order to strike back in the centre, but this must always be judged very carefully. Here White's attack is too strong. Black should wait for White to exchange on g7.

13 **營xh6 cxd4** (D)



14 2g5!

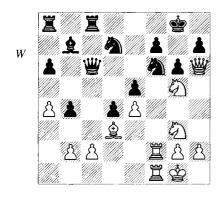
White continues aggressively. She ties the f6-knight to the defence of the h7-pawn, and prepares an advance of her f-pawn to open the way for the rook to annihilate this knight. The queen feels more than comfortable on h6.

14...e5

In case of 14... \(\Delta\) bd7 White plays 15 f4! with the threat of e5. The main defender is obviously the f6-knight, and it is supported by its colleague from d7. They both need to be removed! Now:

- a) 15...豐a5 16 罩ae1 e5 17 fxe5 豐xe5 18 罩f5! gxf5 (after 18...豐e7 19 罩ef1 both knights will soon be destroyed) 19 公xf5 and due to the threat 20 豐g7#, Black needs to part with his queen.
- b) 15...豐c7 16 罩ae1 (with the idea 17 e5) 16...豐c6 (hitting g2) 17 罩f2! (protecting g2,

and preparing to double rooks on the f-file) 17...e5 18 fxe5 dxe5 19 \(\begin{align*} \text{E}ef1 \) (White is ready to annihilate the knights) 19...\(\begin{align*} \text{fc8} \) (D).

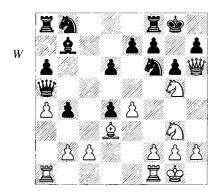


White now has a pleasant choice:

bl) 20 **Qc4** (deflecting the strongest piece away from the king) 20... **Years** 21 **Zets** 6 **Qxf6** 22 **Zets** 6 **Zets** 7. The point is that after 23 b3! Black's queen is finally deflected from the f7-square and Black is mated: 23... **Yes** 24 **Yes** 25 **Zets** 7+ **Zets** 7 26 **Yes** 7+.

b2) 20 黨xf6 is a straightforward approach. 20...包xf6 21 包h5! (it is important that White clears the sixth rank, so that the rook is defended) 21...gxh5 22 黨xf6 營xf6 23 營xf6 winning a piece.

14... $\frac{1}{2}$ a5 (D) is another defensive try.

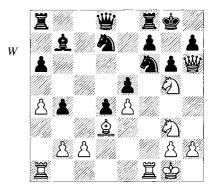


However, it fails to 15 ②h5!!, opening the b1-h7 diagonal with decisive effect. 15...gxh5 16 e5! ②bd7 17 exf6 ②xf6 18 鱼xh7+ 蛤h8 19 鱼d3+ (19 鱼e4+ is also good enough to win) 19...會g8 20 罩ae1 and Black is totally helpless.

15 f4 **(2)bd7** 16 fxe5 dxe5 (D)

17 罩xf6!

17 \(\begin{aligned} \begin{a



chance to destroy them, there is rarely any need to hesitate!

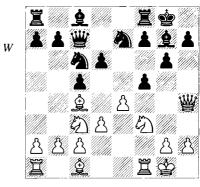
17...公xf6 18 罩f1 罩e8 19 公h5!

We have already seen this method in the previous notes.

19...gxh5 20 罩xf6 豐xf6 21 豐xf6 罩f8 22 豐h6 1-0

White conducted the attack flawlessly, but her opponent allowed her too much leeway.

Here is a similar case but with a different attacking formation, which is characteristic of the Sicilian Grand Prix Attack:



Rogovsky – Tukhaev Ukrainian Ch, Alushta 2002

11 **Q**h6!

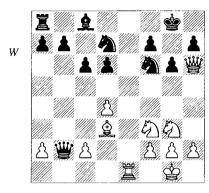
White is ready to build the winning construction with his knight on g5, like in the previous example.

11... 🛭 e5 12 🖺 g5 🚊 d7

12.... 全f6 13 全xf8 全xg5 14 豐xg5 含xf8 is a little better, although White wins by 15 豐f6.

13 兔xg7 啟xg7 14 豐xh7+ 含f6 15 exf5 ②xf5 16 ②d5+ 含xg5 17 冨xf5+ 兔xf5 18 h4+ 含g4 19 ②xc7 国h8 20 豐g7 1-0

Here is a similar attack with additional support from an open e-file:



Gongora - Guerrero Cuba 2003

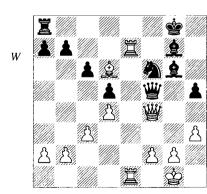
1 ②h5!!

This forces a swift mate. White is really spoilt for choice here, as 1 \(\Delta g5 \) followed by \(\Delta h5! \) is another quick way to achieve victory - the same idea as we saw in Pogonina-Biriukov above.

1...gxh5 1...包xh5 2 罩e8+ +-.

2 罩e8+! ②xe8 3 &xh7+ \$h8 4 &g6+ 1-0

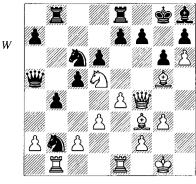
Defenders are rarely naïve enough to exchange off their own fianchettoed bishop and invite a devastating attack. That is why in many cases we need to sacrifice material to achieve this aim.



Ni Hua - Malakhatko Gibraltar 2008

30 **基xg7+! 含xg7 31 基e7+ 含g8 32 營h6 £f7 33 £e5! 1-0**

The dark squares have been cracked open.



Freidles - Ben-Pinchas Israel 2002

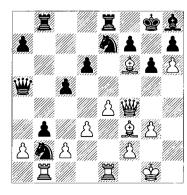
White needs to get rid of his opponent's bishop and finds an original way to do so: 1 9 xe7+! 9 xe7

Or 1... 基xe7 2 拿f6 基e6 3 桌xh8 含xh8?! 4 2 皇f6!!

The point. White exchanges the most important defender, and Black's pieces start to hang. He will now have problems with the dark squares in all lines. 2...b3(D)

Black seeks counterplay with his passed pawn. Blocking the bishop with 2... 15 does 罩xe1+5 罩xe1 b3 6 豐xd6! 豐xe1+7 含g2+-) 4 axb3 含xh8 5 罩f1 +-.

2...包d5 is also insufficient: 3 exd5 罩xe1+4 翼xel b3 5 營e3 營xel+ 6 營xel bxc2 7 皇g5 ②xd3 8 ₩e7 +-.



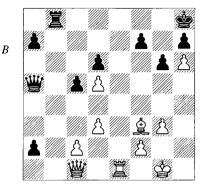
3 臭xh8 ②d5 4 豐c1?!

A reasonable practical choice, but missing 4 exd5! 罩xe1+ 5 含g2, when White wins due to his mating ideas.

4...bxa2

4...bxc2 is more resilient, but 5 罩xb2 當xh8 6 罩xc2 包b4 7 營a1+ 罩e5 8 罩b2 is still grim for Black.

5 **基xb2 含xh8 6 基xb8 基xb8 7 exd5** (D)



7...**.**g8?!

7... ©c3 is the only way to prolong the struggle. Now White wins by force as his mating threats trump Black's passed pawn.

8 營a1 營xe1+

8...f6 9 \(\extraction \text{g2} +-. \)

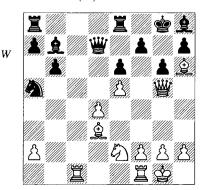
9 營xel 基b1 10 &d1 含f8 11 營a5! 基xd1+ 12 含g2 1-0

12...al 響 13 響d8#.

Advance the Rook's Pawn

Riazantsev – Yandemirov Moscow 2008

1 d4 ②f6 2 c4 g6 3 ②c3 d5 4 cxd5 ②xd5 5 e4 ②xc3 6 bxc3 皇g7 7 皇c4 0-0 8 ②e2 ②c6 9 0-0 ②a5 10 皇d3 b6 11 皇e3 豐d7 12 罩c1 皇b7 13 豐d2 罩fe8 14 皇h6 皇h8 15 e5 c5 16 豐g5 cxd4 17 cxd4 e6 (D)



his opponent did not allow the exchange of bishops. White now turns to the second plan we described at the start of the chapter. He can afford to advance his h-pawn thanks to his space advantage and the stable central structure.

White has tried to weaken the fianchetto, but

18 h4! ②c6 19 ≣fd1 ②e7 20 h5 ≣ac8 21 ≣xc8 ≜xc8 22 ②f4! ±

White hits the sore point g6 with more pieces. 22... 響xd4 23 全c2 響c5

22... 営xd4 23 点c2 営c5 And not 23... **営xe5 24 営xe7! 基xe7 25 基d8+.**

24 hxg6
Finally breaking in, even with the bishops on the board.

24... 当xc2 24...hxg6 25 **\$**xg6 fxg6 26 **\$**xg6 **\$**h7 27

②xh8 +-.

Riazantsey now concluded the game in style

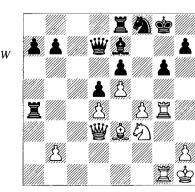
Riazantsev now concluded the game in style: 25 \(\text{ \(\) \(

25 旦d8! 旦xd8 26 g7 旦d1+?! 26... ②g6?! allows 27 豐xd8+. Black's only attempt to prolong the game was 26... 豐d1+ 27

會h2 包f5 28 gxh8豐++ 會xh8 29 包h5 豐xh5+

27 \$\dipho h2 \$\angle f5 28 gxh8\dip ++ \$\dip xh8 29 \$\angle h5 f6 30 \$\dip xf6+ \$\dip g8 31 \$\dip f8# (1-0)\$

The rook's pawn advance is especially effective if the attacker can use the open lines for his rooks:



Topalov – Kramnik World Ch match (game 2), Elista 2006

This position arose from the Slav Defence. Although technically speaking Black does not have a fianchettoed bishop, his position is weakened with the move ...g6 and is similar.

26 h4! 罩b4

26... Qd8? 27 h5 罩e7 28 包h4 罩g7 29 f5! &xh4 30 f6 wins for White.

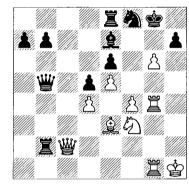
27 h5 曾b5

At this stage most people who were analysing with their computers and not their brains thought Kramnik was clearly better. However, Topalov had a clear idea that he soon revealed:

28... 罩b3 is answered similarly.

29 hxg6!! (D)

28 營c2! 罩xb2



29...h5

В

It suddenly becomes apparent that after 罩xg6 罩h8 35 f6!! Black is getting mated.

30 g7! hxg4

\$xg7 33 ₩xg4+.

31 gxf8營+ &xf8??

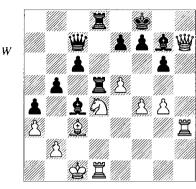
Black's only option was 31... \$\delta xf8 32 \$\delta h7\$ now 35... ≜g5! keeps the game going. After 36 罩e1! (not 36 fxg5? 豐xe3) 36...豐c2 37 fxg5 (37 豐xg5 罩e7) 37...�e7! Black heads for the hills and prepares ... Zh8+. This looks quite unclear. 32 營度6+??

An incredible case of mutual chess blindness - we wonder what Kasparov must have thought of this!

White had a trivial win by 32 罩xg4+ 臭g7 (32... 會f7 33 營h7+; 32... 會h8 33 罩h4+ 會g8 34 **營**h7#) 33 **營**c7 **營**f1+, when 34 **②**g1! covers all the checks. This is an important pattern - with the interposing knight protecting against queen checks - to commit to memory.

After this mistake, Topalov continued to go astray and even lost in the end.

After the opening of the h-file, the fianchettoed bishop remains the key piece to eliminate. Once the bishop is gone, the attacker's major pieces will have more entry points.



Finkel - Kantsler Kfar-Saba 1999

1 罩dh1!!

White triples his major pieces, creating a mating threat.

1...e6

A desperate attempt to escape. 1... 基xd4 allows an instant mate by 2 營h8+! 食xh8 3 罩xh8+ 會g7 4 罩1h7#.

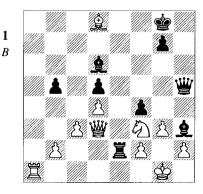
2 ②xe6+!

But now White clears the seventh rank, and performs the same operation.

2...fxe6 3 營h8+!! 含f7 4 營xg7+! 含xg7 5 罩h7+ 當f8 6 罩h8+ 1-0

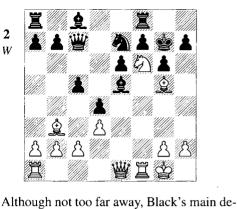
国1h7# follows. Both rooks did a great job!

Exercises

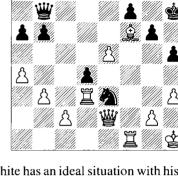


White's fianchetto structure lacks its bishop. Conclude the attack.

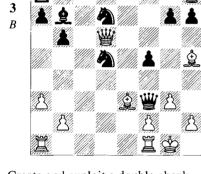
5 W



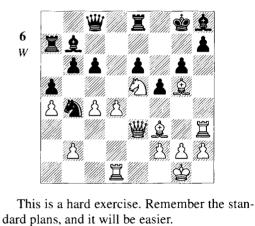
fender is missing from his post.



White has an ideal situation with his monster on f6.

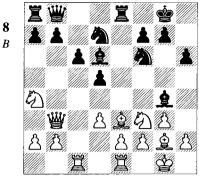


Create and exploit a double check.



Play like a world champion!

7 В



Is everything rock solid in the white position?

18 The Mystery of the Opposite-Coloured Bishops

In endgames, the presence of opposite-coloured bishops can increase the defender's chances to hold a draw, but in the middlegame they tend to strengthen the attacker's chances. The reason is that the attacker can play mainly on the squares of the colour of his bishop, which the defender's bishop cannot challenge.

Here are some principles to bear in mind in this scenario:

- 1. The correct strategy is to attack the king. A material or positional advantage is not so important if the king is in danger.
- 2. Try to conduct the game on the colour of your own bishop.
- 3. The more major pieces you have on the board, the better are your chances for a successful attack.
- 4. The presence of knights usually helps the defender, since they may protect squares of both colours and be exchanged for a bishop.
- 5. Make sure that your bishop is active, even at the cost of a pawn or more.

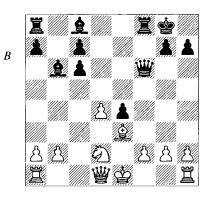
Let's take a look at an example where the king comes under attack in the centre when there are opposite-coloured bishops.

Macieja – Vescovi Bermuda 2004

1 e4 e5 2 包f3 包c6 3 &c4 &c5 4 c3 包f6 5 d4 exd4 6 e5 d5 7 &b5 包e4 8 cxd4 &b6 9 包c3 0-0 10 &xc6 bxc6 11 &e3 f5 12 exf6 營xf6 13 包xe4?

Black takes a firm grip of the game now. 13 h3? **Qa6** is also bad, but White should play 13 **Pb3**, which is best met by 13... **Pg6**!, as in Rowson-I.Sokolov, Selfoss 2003, and not 13... **Qab** 14 **Qab** 2 **Qab** 2 **Qab** 3 **Qab** 2 17 **Qab** 1 **Qab** 3 **Qab** 4 **Qab** 1 18 **Qab** 1 ±, when Black has no compensation for the lost material.

13...dxe4 14 🖾 d2 (D)



14...**≜**a6!

Black sacrifices a pawn in order to keep his opponent's king in the centre. This is in accordance with the principle 'initiative over material'. 14... #g6 15 #c2 &f5 is too passive.

15 ②xe4

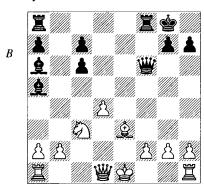
After 15 營g4 罩ae8 Black holds the initiative.

15...**≜**a5+

Black's position now looks very harmonious. A sense of aesthetics can be quite a useful guide in judging such positions.

16 ②c3 (D)

16 ②d2 loses instantly to 16... 豐xf2+ followed by ... Zae8+.



16...\(\hat{\omega}\)xc3+!

As the old saying goes, one of the greatest advantages of having the bishop-pair is that you can chose the best moment to give it up! Now we have a position with opposite-coloured bishops, where Black has a winning attack.

17 bxc3 **營g6**

Black strikes on the light squares, where his opponent is weak. 17...c5!? also deserves attention.

18 罩b1?!

Eventually White will lose the b-file, which is not a surprise, because his king hinders the connection of the rooks. He had to play passively by 18 \(\begin{array}{c} \beta & \text{base} & \text{b

19 **≦**b2 **≦**ab8 −**+**.

19...**.**食c2 20 營e2 罩ab8!

Black seeks a highway for his rook on the open b-file.

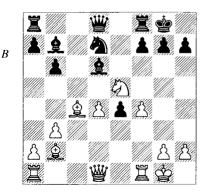
21 豐c4+ 含h8 22 罩xb8 罩xb8

19 c4 豐xg2 is also bad for White.

There is no defence against the penetration on the b-file. In addition to his problems on the light squares, White is playing practically without his h1-rook.

23 曾e2 罩b2 24 曾c5 兔b3+ 25 曾f3 兔d5+ 26 曾f4 曾e4+ 27 曾g3 豐xg2+ 28 曾h4 豐xh1 0-1

As noted above, the initiative is everything in some opposite-bishop positions.

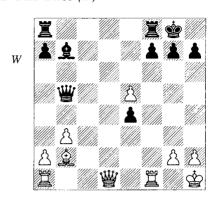


Sargisian – Stellwagen Wijk aan Zee 2007

15...b5?

The wrong decision. Black is going for opposite-coloured bishops but this will favour White!

16 ②xb5 ②xe5 17 fxe5 ②xe5 18 dxe5 豐b6+ 19 窗h1 豐xb5 (D)



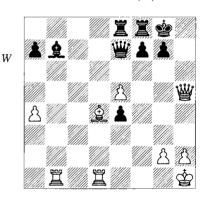
20 **曾g4!** ±

The target now is g7.

20...h5 21 豐xh5 罩ae8 22 a4 豐d5 23 罩fd1 豐a5 24 b4 豐b6 25 魚d4!

White sacrifices a pawn – we know that when we have opposite-coloured bishops, material is less important than the attack. Thus White gains time for his al-rook to perform a rook-lift and join the attack without delay.

25... 響xb4 26 罩ab1 響e7 (D)



27 罩b3! +-

Black intends ... 2e6 to blockade the pawn on e5 and thus shut off the d4-bishop.

28 e6!!

White opens a line for his d4-bishop. Remember that the initiative is more important than material with opposite bishops!

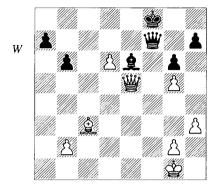
28...f6 29 罩h3 食xe6 30 營h7+ 含f7 31 罩g3 罩g8 32 營xe4?

 32...**罩h8?**

32...g6 was the only move. 33 **曾g6+ 會f8 34 魚c5 1-0**

33 ggut g10 34 %C3 1.0

Here is an example of conducting the attack on the colour squares that your bishop controls.

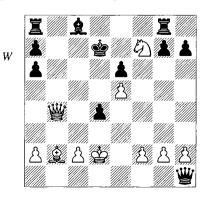


Seirawan – Leenhouts Dutch Team Ch 2008

White creates a dark-squared mating-net: 54 營h8+! 營g8 55 營f6+ 營f7 56 營d8+ 營e8 57 全g7+! 1-0

57... 全f7 58 豐f6+ 全g8 59 皇h6 豐f7 60 豐d8+.

Some time ago when analysing a sharp Sicilian line with a student of mine, I (DB) discovered the following position, which convinced me that initiative is everything when attacking with opposite-coloured bishops:

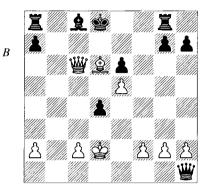


(This position occurs in analysis by Euwe of a sharp line in the Pin Variation.)

18 臭a3! 會c7 19 響d6+

There is another way to deliver mate: 19

19...會b7 20 豐e7+ 會c6 21 豐c5+ 會b7 22 ②d6+ 會b8 23 ②b5 axb5 24 豐xb5+ 會c7 25 ゑd6+ 會d8 26 豐c6 (D)

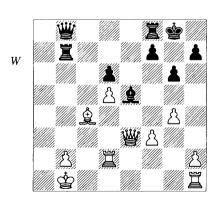


Black is two rooks ahead, but cannot prevent the inevitable mate.

26...**≜**d7

Black is trying to cover his king with the bishop, but White transfers the attack to the colour of his bishop after capturing the rook.

27 營xa8+ 总c8 28 營xa7 总d7 29 營b8+ 总c8 30 營c7+ 含e8 31 營e7#



Kamsky – Kasparov Manila Olympiad 1992

When you have an overwhelming advantage on the squares of your bishop, your opponent's only chance might be to surrender an exchange to eliminate the bishop.

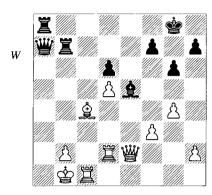
31 營e2

31 b3 loses on the spot to 31... **基**c8 32 **含**c2 **基**xc4+ 33 bxc4 **基**b2+.

31... 營a7 32 罩c1

White places his rooks on the diagonal of the black bishop, desperately trying to attract its attention.

32...罩**a8** (D)



Kasparov is not interested, and rightly plays for the attack. The unopposed bishop is worth more than a mere rook!

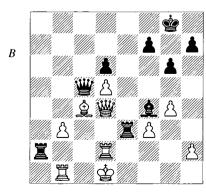
33 b3

Now the dark squares in White's camp become hopelessly weak, but Kasparov was already threatening mate: 33 h4 營al+ 34 含c2 臺xb2+35 含d1 營xc1+36 含xc1 墨al#.

33...全f4 34 含c2 罩e7 35 營d3 營c5 36 罩b1

罩e3 37 營d4 罩a2+ 38 含d1 (D) Or 38 罩b2 罩xb2+ 39 **營**xb2 **\$e5** 40

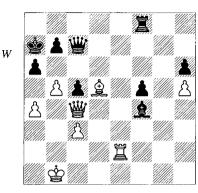
Or 38 罩b2 罩xb2+ 39 豐xb2 夏e5 40 豐a2 罩c3+ and Black mates.



38...罩xf3 39 豐xf4 罩xf4 40 罩xa2 豐g1+ 41 含c2 豐xh2+ 0-1

Clearance ideas are especially effective when there are opposite-coloured bishops. We

use them mainly to open space for our bishop. Here is an example in which a file is opened so a rook can combine its power with that of the bishop.

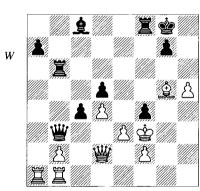


Ki. Georgiev – Macieja Calvia Olympiad 2004

White's bishop is great, but not his rook. This, however, is subject to change:

49 b6+!! 豐xb6+ 50 罩b2 罩f6 51 豐xf4 1-0

We can also annihilate the opponent's bishop if it is too good in its defensive role:



Yakubovich – Simagin Moscow 1936

With his last move, ...f4!, Black started a decisive attack. He will now clear all files, ranks and diagonals you may think of!

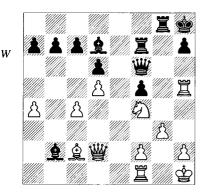
1 皇xf4 g5!! 2 hxg6 罩xf4+!

The bishop was doing a really good job. Instead of continuing the attack on light squares, Black drags his opponent's king into his camp.

3 \$\times xf4 \boxed{1} \times 6+ 4 \times 3 \boxed{1} \times xg6+ 5 \times f3 \times g4+ 6

會3 &e2+ 7 當h4 營b7 8 營xe2 營e7+ 0-1

Here is an example of my own, where I temporarily sacrificed a pawn in order to achieve a favourable opposite-coloured-bishops position:



V. Georgiev – Paragua Turin 2000

25 ②e6! **②xe6 26 dxe6 營xe6 27 ②xf5 營f6** 27... **三**xf5 28 **三**xf5 **營**xf5 29 **營**xb2+ **三**g7 30 **營**xb7 **營**d3 31 **三**e1.

28 **鱼e4 基e7** 29 **數d3 基g5** 30 **基xh7**+ **基xh7** 31 **鱼xh7 數d4** 32 **數b1 b6**?

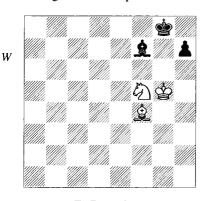
Black had to try 32... \widetilde{\pi}xc4.

33 \(\delta\)e4?

33 f4 followed by \(\mathbb{Z} e1 \) is a more incisive continuation.

33.... 全c3 34 全d5 c6 35 全xc6 豐xc4 36 全g2 罩g7 37 豐c1 全g8 38 罩d1 1-0

Even in simple-looking endgames, mating attacks involving opposite-coloured bishops can prove devastating, especially when the defender's king is short of space:



E. Pogosiants Shakhmaty v SSSR, 1981

In this study Black will have to part with his bishop if he does not want to allow mate.

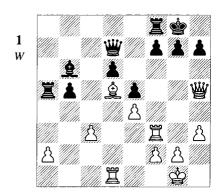
1 ∳f6

White intends **②**h6, **③**e7+ and **③**g7#. 1...**③**f8

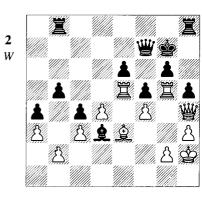
1... ≜g6 2 ②d6 ≜h5 3 ≜h6 ≜g6 (3... ≜g4 4 \$e7 and the knight lands on f6) 4 ②c8 and

2 **≜h6+ ≜e8** 3 **€d6+** White wins.

Exercises



Make use of your 'extra' piece.



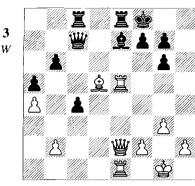
The beast is asleep...

В

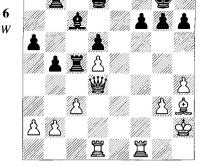
5 W 7

В

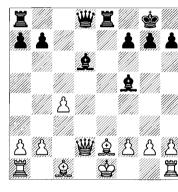
W



Find a way to break in.



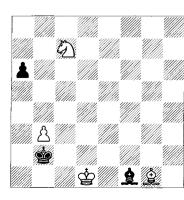
Find a vigorous way for White to press home his attack on the light squares.



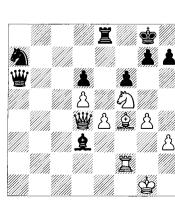
White has not yet castled...



Black must find a favourable transformation to an opposite-bishops situation.



White needs to win the black pawn, or else must play for mate.

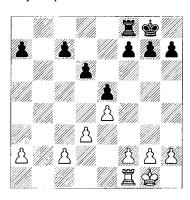


Remember the principles and find the best way for White to smash through.

19 Chess Highways: Open Files

Pawns shape the chessboard struggle and dictate the natural plans for both sides, so their mere absence from a file marks it out as an important chess highway. An 'open file' is one with no pawns on it, while if it contains only an enemy pawn, then we call it a 'semi-open file'. There is a huge difference between the two, as a semi-open file is a one-way street, while an open file can be used by both players. Open files should in most cases be controlled by major pieces, preferably rooks. Via the open files one can invade the enemy position. You should seek to control open files, and this will often give you a significant advantage. As always there are some exceptions, as a file may have little value if there are no possible entry-squares on it, while contesting an open file over which you will ultimately lose control may only serve to aggravate your problems. And in yet other cases, occupying an open file might only lead to mass exchanges, and a dissipation of your advantage.

We should note that the rook is the only piece that does not need to be centralized to show its full potential. The only thing that it needs is open space.

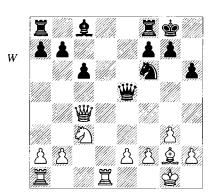


In the diagrammed position, the side that is about to move will certainly occupy the open b-file. In its initial position the rook controls only five squares, while on the b-file the number of squares within its reach increases to 12.

From here it can penetrate the opponent's camp. The seventh rank is an especially juicy target, as there are several enemy pawns on this rank. A further typical benefit of putting a rook on the seventh rank is that this tends to restrict the enemy king.

Here is a summary of some useful general pointers for play with open files:

- 1. Get control over the open file.
- 2. Double rooks.
- 3. The best place for a rook is on the seventh rank.
- 4. Penetrate the enemy position and destroy it.



Simagin – Kotov Moscow Ch 1945

15 **營d4**

With this move White fights for the only open file.

15... 營h5 16 f3 桌h3?

Better is 16.... e6 17 e4 營a5 intending ... 写fd8.

17 e4 皇xg2 18 含xg2 罩fe8 19 罩d2!

A typical idea to double rooks on the open file.

19... 曾a5 20 星ad1 星e7 21 曾c4 星ae8 22 星d6 曾b6

White has gained full control over the only open file. What will be his plan to convert the

advantage? First he needs to advance his pawns, staking out more space.

23 b4 罩e6 24 罩6d4!

The side with a dynamic advantage should normally try to avoid exchanges, especially of his most active pieces.

第1d2 分h7 28 h4 分f8 29 罩d6 分e6 30 分xe6 **黨xe6 31 黨xe6 黨xe6 32 營d4 營f8 33 f4 黨e8 34** e5 營e7 35 a3 a6 36 h5 營e6 37 營d7 罩e7 38 ₩xe6!

A good decision: White liquidates to an easily winning ending. This is the simplest way to realize the advantage.

38...fxe6 39 \$\dip f3 \boxed{\textit{Z}}c7 40 \$\dip e4 \$\dip f7 41 \boxed{\textit{Z}}d6 **\$e7 42 f5!**

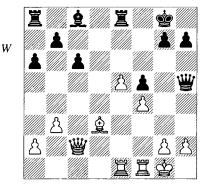
In order to create a passed pawn.

罩c7 46 g4 含f7 47 a4 含e7 48 a5 含f7 49 含e4 할e7 50 할d5 罩d7+ 51 罩d6 罩c7 52 e6 할e8 53 罩b6 �e7 54 罩b1 �e8 55 罩b4 罩c1 56 罩xb7 罩d1+ 57 \$e4 罩e1+ 58 \$f5 罩f1+ 59 \$g6 罩f4 60 g5 罩g4 61 當xg7 罩xg5+ 62 當f6 1-0

42...exf5+ 43 含xf5 c5 44 bxc5 罩xc5 45 罩b6

A very instructive game. White demonstrated a typical plan for making the most of his advantages in this kind of position. The overall plan can be summarized as follows

- 1. First win the only open file.
- 2. Then push pawns to get a space advan-
- 3. Finally liquidate to a winning rook ending.



Wojtaszek – Bobras Polish Ch. Lublin 2008

20 罩d1!

The best place for the rook is the open file.

20...**.**≜e6

White now gains control over the d-file using line-clearance and a zwischenzug: 21 &c4! &xc4 22 營xc4+ 營f7 23 罩d7

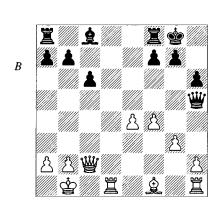
The best move! Rooks love the seventh rank.

White is clearly better thanks to his control of the open file, via which he can invade the enemy position.

25...\$f8 26 \$f2 \(\bar{e}f2 \(\bar{e}f2 \(\bar{e}f2 \(\bar{e}f3 27 \(\bar{e}d8+ \(\bar{e}8 28 \(\bar{e}8 d6 **含f7 29 含e3 罩e7**

As we know, White should push the pawns first and then create a passed pawn to win the

30 c5 含e8 31 罩b1 罩c7 32 a4 a5 33 g4 fxg4 34 f5 \$e7 35 \$f4 \$\boxed{\textit{E}f8 36 }\degree xg4 \$\boxed{\textit{E}b8 37 h4 }\degree f7



Mamedyarov - Svidler European Team Ch, Khersonisos 2007

18...**.**⊈g4!

Black takes control of the open d-file by attacking the d1-square. White will never get the chance to double rooks on the d-file.

19 **≌e**1

through.

Or 19 罩d2 罩ad8 20 桌d3 罩d4 21 e5 罩fd8 22 食h7+ 含h8 23 罩xd4 罩xd4 24 豐c3 食f5+ 25 鱼xf5 豐xf5+ 26 含a1 豐e4 and Black breaks

19...罩ad8 20 **호e2 罩d4!**

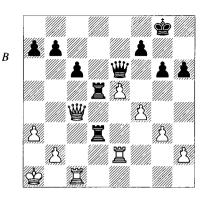
Preparing to double rooks on the open file. 21 皇xg4 晋xg4 22 e5

Or 22 \(\mathbb{Z}\)d1 \(\mathbb{Z}\)fd8 23 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xd4 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xd4 24 \(\mathbb{Z}\)e1 a5 25 **營c3 營d7**.

22...罩fd8

Now Black is getting a firm grip over the dfile.

23 **基e2 g6 24 基c1 基d3 25 a3 豐e6 26 豐c4 基8d5 27 含a1** (D)



It is time for stage two of our procedure.

27...a5

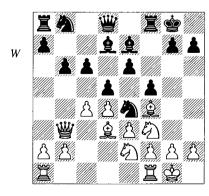
As Black's control over the d-file is absolute, he now advances his pawns to start an attack.

28 營c2 h5 29 冨f1 b5 30 冨ef2 營f5 31 冨e1

31 營xc6 罩dl+ 32 罩xdl 罩xdl+ 33 含a2 營bl+ 34 含b3 罩d3+.

31...c5 32 e6 fxe6 33 罩fe2 罩d6 34 豐c1 豐d5 35 罩e5 豐b3 0-1

Before we open the position, our rooks sit modestly behind the pawn-chains. We may use the **pawn-shelter** to establish control over a file before we open it. To do this, we double rooks behind our pawn before exchanging it. This is especially effective if the pawn-tension is in our favour (i.e. our opponent does not have a good way to resolve the tension):

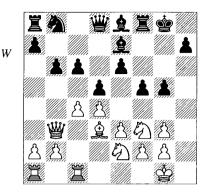


V. Georgiev – Vallejo Pons Elgoibar 1998

11 **ℤfc1!**

Getting ready to open the c-file.

11...g5 12 **≜**g3 **≦**xg3 13 hxg3 **≜**e8 (*D*)



14 \(\mathbb{Z}\)c2!

White wants to double rooks first, before the c-file is opened. If White captures on d5 first, Black will take back with his e-pawn, keeping the c-file semi-closed. Note that Black cannot exchange by 14...dxc4 as this destroys his structure; nor can he just sit and wait, as he needs to develop his queenside.

14... 2d7 15 cxd5

Right on time. Now Black has no choice, since the c6-pawn is unprotected.

15...cxd5 16 罩ac1 ±

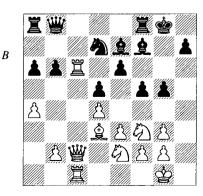
White has complete control over the c-file and threatens $\hat{\underline{\diamondsuit}}$ a6.

16...a6

Black parries White's threat, but the pawns on their third rank are now rather vulnerable.

The second step is to enter the enemy position.

18...**当b8 19 当c2** (D)



19...h6?!

Black takes measures against White's g4 idea, but this leaves more squares on Black's

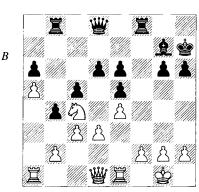
third rank unprotected and so allows another potent attacking idea.

20 &xf5!

20 罩c7 is met by 20... 食e8.

While this move was enough for a win later on, White could have won immediately by 22 營e6+ 富f7 23 富c8 營xc8 24 富xc8 富xc8 25 ②e5 +-. Therefore the rest of the game is not so relevant to our discussion.

An alternative method to gain control over an open file is to install one of our pieces on the file and then to double rooks behind it:



Bojkov – Van den Doel Zwolle 2007

Although analysis engines tend to be lukewarm about White's chances (and some even evaluate this position in Black's favour!), I am inclined to think that White is strategically winning. The plan is simple: install the knight on b6, which gives Black a difficult choice: allow White to exchange on b4 and later win this pawn, or make the exchange on c3, after which White will double rooks on the b-file in the shadow of the knight and then penetrate with

25...罩b5?!

them at the right moment.

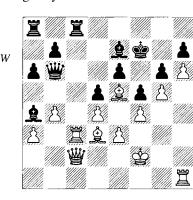
This loses some time and only helps White's plans.

26 營e2 急f6 27 罩eb1 罩b7 28 包b6 bxc3 29 bxc3 罩bf7 30 罩f1 急h4 31 g3 急g5 32 包c4 營d7 33 罩ab1 急d8 34 罩b8 h5

I started to feel quite nervous in my opponent's time-trouble, and missed the clear win 35 這fb1!; e.g., 35... 基xf2 36 豐xf2 基xf2 37 尝xf2 \$\dispherightarrow\$h6 38 \$\beta\$1b7 \dispherightarrow\$c7 39 \$\beta\$h8+ \disples\$g7 (39... \disples\$g5 40 h4+ 할g4 41 할g2) 40 월a8 할f6 41 h4 +-. For some reason I thought that somewhere in these lines he could bring his queen to a4 and achieve perpetual check.

Instead 35 \(\pmage \text{g2}?! \) was played in the game and White won later with some difficulties.

We already know the importance of an open file, and how effective its use can be. Under certain circumstances it can be well worth sacrificing material to gain complete control over a vital highway.



V. Milov – Ramesh Biel (rapid) 2000

1 罩xc8!? 食xc2 2 罩xa8

Sacrificing a bishop to energize his rooks. But 2 \(\mathbb{Z}\) xc2!? may be better, dominating the c-file and keeping Black under pressure.

2...**. £**xd3 3 **□**c1!?

Trying for more than 3 罩h8 豐c6 4 罩xh7+ 含f8 5 罩h8+ 含f7, with a draw. White now threatens 4 罩h8, and Black must find the right countersacrifice to grant him counterplay.

3...**≜d8?**

This fails to hinder White's plan, as do 3...\$\delta 6? 4 \(\)\delta cc8 and 3...\$\delta xb4? 4 \(\)\delta c7+ \$\delta e7 5 \\ \)\delta h8. However, 3...\$\delta c4! is a good defence: 4 \(\)\delta h8 \$\delta xb4! 5 \(\)\delta kh7+ \$\delta e8\$ or 4 \(\)\delta xc4 dxc4 5 \(\)\delta h8 c3, and Black's counterplay arrives in time

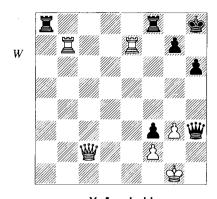
4 罩cc8 營b5 5 罩xd8 鱼f1 6 罩f8+ 含e7 7 鱼f6+ 含d6 8 罩ad8+ 含c7 9 罩c8+ 含b6 10 鱼d8+ 含a7 11 罩a8+! 1-0

11...當xa8 12 息b6+ and mate.

to force White to take a draw.

We have already noted that after occupying an open file, rooks need to strive for the seventh

rank. One bonus idea is that two rooks on the seventh rank are capable of delivering mate on their own:

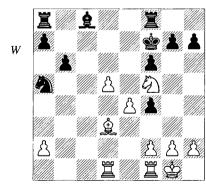


Y. Averbakh

1 營h7+! 含xh7 2 罩xg7+ 含h8 3 罩h7+ 含g8 4 罩bg7#

The rooks managed to deliver mate due to the poor position of Black's rook on f8, where it obstructed his own king.

We should note that two rooks supported by a single pawn can give mate without any such assistance from the enemy pieces. Here is an example where White makes use of this fact.



Krasenkow – Kveinys Polish Team Ch. Lubniewice 2002

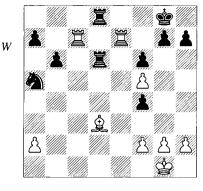
Krasenkow first occupies the open c-file with his rooks:

21 \(\hat{\mathbb{E}}c1! \) \(\hat{\mathbb{E}}xf5 \) 22 \(\hat{\mathbb{E}}c7+ \\hat{\mathbb{E}}g8 \) 23 \(\at{\mathbb{E}}ad8 \) 24 \(\hat{\mathbb{E}}e1! \) \(\hat{\mathbb{E}}f7 \) 25 \(d6 \) \(\hat{\mathbb{E}}fd7 \)

Then he uses the power of his pawn to secure absolute control over the seventh rank.

26 罩e7! 罩xd6 (D)

The harvest starts now.



27 區xg7+ 堂h8 28 區xh7+ 堂g8 29 區cg7+ 堂f8 30 區xa7 堂g8
White now wraps up the game by advancing

his h-pawn. 31 h4! **\(\) \(\) \(\) \(\) \(\) 33 \(\) \(\) \(\) 34**

h6! 1-0

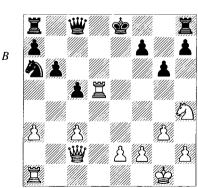
The pawn is protecting the g7-rook, and its colleague is free to finish Black off.

Topalov – Anand Bilbao 2008

1 d4 ②f6 2 c4 e6 3 ②f3 b6 4 g3 息a6 5 豐c2 **2**b7 6 **2**g2 c5 7 d5 exd5 8 cxd5 ②xd5 9 0-0 **2**e7 10 罩d1!

A good move. The rook occupies a file that will soon be opened.

10...豐c8 11 a3 公f6 12 兔g5 d5 13 兔xf6 兔xf6 14 公c3 兔xc3 15 bxc3 公a6 16 公h4 g6 17 兔xd5 兔xd5 18 罩xd5 (D)

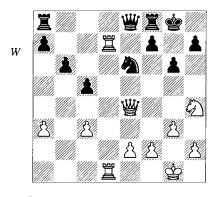


As a result of his accurate play, Topalov has won the only open file.

18...0-0 19 **\(\mathbb{Z}\)ad1**

Doubling rooks, which will help White invade the seventh rank.

19...公c7 20 罩d7 公e6 21 豐e4 豐e8 (D)



22 **Df3!**

With this move, White starts a decisive attack against Black's king thanks to the dominant position of the rook on the seventh rank and the fact that Black's kingside contains weaknesses.

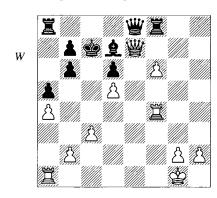
22...c4

Or:

- a) 22... \bigcirc d4 23 \bigcirc e5 \bigcirc c6 24 f4 \bigcirc xe5 25 fxe5 \bigcirc e6 26 \bigcirc 1 d6 \bigcirc h3 27 \bigcirc e7 \pm with the idea of doubling rooks on the seventh rank while Black lacks any real counterplay.
- b) 22... Id8 again allows White to double his major pieces on the seventh rank: 23 學b7! (winning a pawn) 23... Idxd7 24 Ixd7 學a8 25 Ixf7 ±.

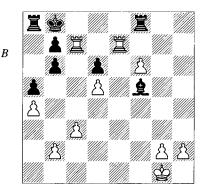
23 当h4 公c5 24 罩e7 罩d8 25 罩f1 1-0

Doubled rooks on the seventh rank may be very potent in the endgame too. Here is one more example from Topalov:



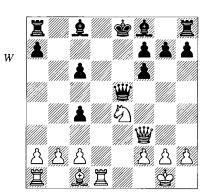
Topalov – Vallejo Pons Dos Hermanas (rapid) 2008

27 罩e1! 營xe7 28 罩c4+ \$b8 29 罩xe7 &f5 30 罩cc7! (D)



Finally doubling rooks on the seventh rank. The a8-rook will be out of play for a long time, and Topalov was able to prove his advantage.

Early in the game, it is common for pawntension to be created in the centre of the board. Usually both players will fight for the centre in some manner, as no one is willing to surrender his centre without a fight. At some point, one player may find it necessary or beneficial to exchange pawns, so the central files are often the first to open. If this happens when one of the kings is still uncastled, it can easily become a target for the rooks on the open central files.



E. Espinosa – Miranda Cuba 2004

Black's king has lingered too long in the centre and White proves the folly of such an approach with energetic play. 1 ②xf6+!! 豐xf6 2 臭g5!

White sacrifices a second piece to clear both central files for his rooks. We have seen this method in the Clearance chapter.

2... **營xg5** 2... 營xf3 3 罩d8#.

3 曾xc6+ 含e7 4 罩d5

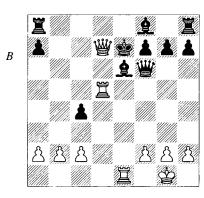
Another subtle move. White clears the way for the other rook to occupy the e-file with gain

of tempo. 4...曾f6 Or:

a) 4... 響f4 5 罩e1+ 兔e6 6 罩d7+ 會f6 7

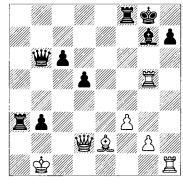
\sum xf7+! and White wins. b) 4... Yh6 5 Yxa8 Ya6 (5... Ye6 6 Zad1 會f6 7 罩d8 +-) 6 罩c5 臭e6 7 罩d1 會f6 8 豐f3+

\$e7 9 \(\mathbb{Z}\)c7+ +-. 5 罩e1+ 臭e6 6 營d7# (D)



1-0

W



Y. Perez – E. Espinosa Cuba 2004

Open files can also be used against the castled position. Here White has already managed to open the h-file for his rook, and has activated the other one thanks to a rook-lift. 1 \(\mathbb{Z}\xg7+!\)

White sacrifices both rooks in order to annihilate the last defenders of Black's king. The queen and bishop will do the rest.

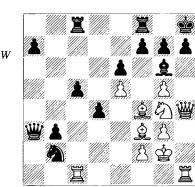
1...當xg7 2 營g5+ 當h8

2...\$\delta f7 also allows a forced mate after 3 罩xh7+ 含e6 4 營e7+ 含f5 5 罩h5+ 含g6 (5...含f4 6 營e5#) 6 罩g5+ 含h6 7 營g7#.

3 罩xh7+! 1-0

Black resigned due to 3... \$\delta xh7 4 \mathred{2}\d3+ \dd8h8 5 營h6+ 含g8 6 營h7#.

We have seen that rooks work together very well on the seventh rank. They can also coordinate well on the edges of the board, especially if the enemy king has been denuded.



Tovio – Zarate Cartagena 2005

First White smashes through on the halfopen h-file:

1 \mathbb{\ma

1 26! is also effective. 1... & xh7 2 & e4 罩fd8

Or:

罩h1#.

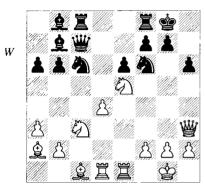
a) 2...g6 3 ②f6 and \(\bar{\bar{\text{\$z\$}}}\) xh7#.

will follow. c) 2...f5!? was the best practical chance, al-

though it fails after 3 exf6 當g8 4 臭xh7+ 當f7 5 臭g6+! 當g8 (5...當xg6 6 包e5+ 當f5 7 當f3! followed by g4#) 6 f7+! 基xf7 7 基h8+! 含xh8 8 &xf7 and Black is mated on the h-file with 3 ②f6! gxf6 4 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xh7+ \(\delta\)g8 5 gxf6 The threat is simple: \(\mathbb{Z}\)ch1.

5... 2d3 6 \(\bar{2}\) ch1 2e1+ 7 \(\bar{2}\) xe1 1-0

If the kings have castled on the same wing, it is normally too risky to attack the enemy king with a pawn-storm, as this exposes one's own king to a counterattack. In this case we transfer our rooks in front of our pawn-chain. This method is called the **rook-lift**.

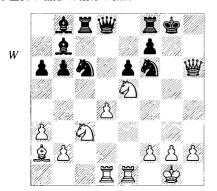


Bargan – Agafii Chisinau 2005

White first detonates the position of his opponent's king:

1 **②xh6! gxh6 2 營xh6 營d8** (D)

- 2...心h7 does not prevent the rook-lift: 3 罩e3 ②xe5 4 dxe5 �h8 5 罩h3. The rook's mission is accomplished, and Black now has no choice but to open up his king: 5...f5 6 ②xe6 罩cd8 7 罩d7! 罩xd7 8 豐xf8#.
- 2...②xe5 only helps yet another rook-lift, this time along the fifth rank: 3 基xe5 ②h7 4 基h5 f5 5 鱼xe6+ 拿h8 6 鱼xc8 基xc8 7 墨e1 with the idea 7...豐f7 8 豐xh7+ 豐xh7 9 基xh7+ 歐xh7 10 墨e7+ and White wins.



Now the rook joins the fray.

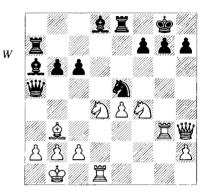
3 罩d3!

This is the right rook; the other should control e5.

3...②xe5 4 罩xe5 臭xe5 5 罩h3

Black is helpless.

One open file can be sufficient for a rook to do its evil work:



Maksimenko – P.H. Nielsen Germany 2003

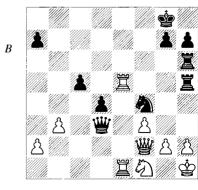
1 ②xc6! ②xc6 2 豐xh7+! 曾xh7

2...當f8 3 豐xg7+ (3 ②g6+ fxg6 4 豐g8+ 當e7 5 豐f7#) 3...當e7 4 豐xf7#.

3 罩h3+ 掌g8 4 ②g6! 1-0

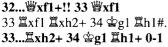
Black's king has nowhere to run, and \(\mathbb{L}\)h8# is inevitable.

In the following example Black could not deliver mate, but the energy of his pieces on the h-file was sufficient to win material by chasing the white king into forks.



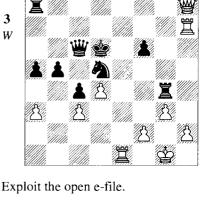
Zavgorodny – Moiseenko Ukrainian Team Ch. Alushta 2005

CHESS HIGHWAYS: OPEN FILES



33... 黨xh2+ 34 曾g1 黨h1+ 0-1

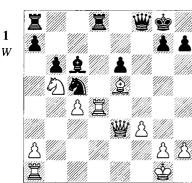
White resigned in view of 35 含f2 罩xf1+36 會xfl (or 36 萬xfl 公d3+) 36... 萬h1+ 37 含f2 Ød3+.



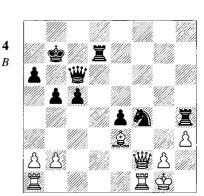
Exercises

file?

2 W

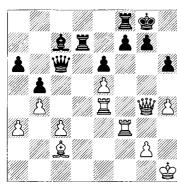


Should White double his rooks on the open

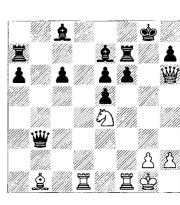


Black can win by a blitzkrieg.

5



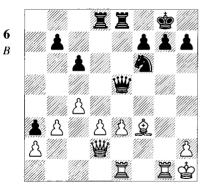
White's major pieces look impressive. Make use of them.



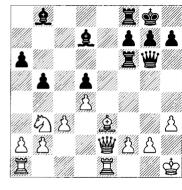
Both rooks are needed here!

7 *B* 8

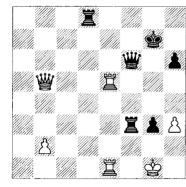
В



Find a tactical way to occupy an important file.



Black has already lifted his rook...



Both kings are in danger, and it is Black to move.

20 Trapping a Piece

We can trap a piece in two ways. The first is the more straightforward: we attack a piece that has no escape-squares, and then capture it. The second method is shutting a piece out of the battle. In this case our opponent still has his piece on the board, but it is so limited (by our dominant pieces or his own troops) that it is practically useless.

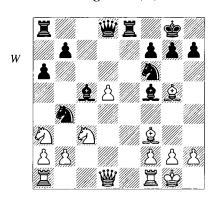
Both methods are very common; mate for instance is limitation of the opponent's king, followed by trapping it. A strategy for trapping starts with the restriction of the opponent's pieces, which makes them vulnerable because they lack good squares. Once we have brought up reinforcements, we can start harvesting the fruit of our strategy.

Here is a famous example where Kasparov paralyses most of Karpov's army thanks to the supreme coordination of his pieces, and one very well-placed knight in particular.

Karpov – Kasparov

World Ch match (game 16), Moscow 1985

1 e4 c5 2 ②f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ②xd4 ②c6 5 ②b5 d6 6 c4 ②f6 7 ②1c3 a6 8 ②a3 d5 9 cxd5 exd5 10 exd5 ②b4 11 ②e2 ③c5? 12 0-0? 0-0 13 ③f3 ③f5 14 ③g5 ③e8! (D)



Karpov does not feel the danger, and decides to keep the pawn. More advisable is 15 ②c4 ②d3 16 a3 ③xc4 (16...⑤xf1? 17 axb4 ⑤xc4 18 bxc5 ±) 17 axb4 ⑥xb4 18 ⑥e1, by which White relieves his defence and obtains an equal game.

15...b5!

This move takes away the c4-square from the a3-knight and forces it to endure a miserable existence. Pawns are very well suited to the task of restricting enemy pieces.

16 罩ad1 勾d3!

A knight could not dream of a better career. From this excellent outpost, it denies White's rooks access to both open files, and will play the dominant role for the rest of the game. The principle is the same as for the pawns: it is most effective to restrict enemy pieces with less valuable ones of our own.

17 Dab1?

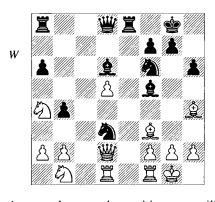
17 d6 is better, and leads to complications.

17...h6! 18 &h4 b4! 19 🖸 a4

19 \triangle e2 g5! 20 \triangle xg5 \triangle xf2 and Black is on top.

19... ≜d6 (D)

Kasparov had this position on his analysis board before the game – an impressive piece of preparation, and a demonstration of how well he understood his opponent and could anticipate his choices.



A mere glance at the position now will convince us that Black has achieved everything

that he could hope for by using the limitation principle. Both white knights lack prospects (and any moves at all), while the same goes for his rooks, and even the white queen has few prospects. At the same time, the black pieces that are restricting them possess great energy. The white pieces are in constant danger of being trapped.

20 ≜g3

20 營c2? 罩c8 21 營b3 勺f4 (Black already threatens to trap the queen with 22...\(\mathbb{L}\)c2) 22 罩cl 罩xcl 23 罩xcl g5 24 臭g3 g4 suddenly traps the bishop. This should not astonish you; many similar lines will follow, in which White's pieces suffer.

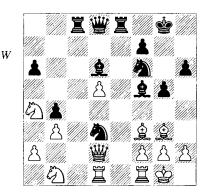
20...罩c8

Thanks to the monster on d3, Black has occupied both open files (remember what we said about bringing up reinforcements!).

21 b3

Karpov wants to bring his knight back into the game via b2.

21...g5!! (D)



This excellent move is still based on the idea of restricting White's pieces: by means of a highly concrete idea, Kasparov prevents his opponent from freeing his position. The loosening of Black's kingside is of no consequence, as long as White lacks active pieces to exploit it.

22 & xd6

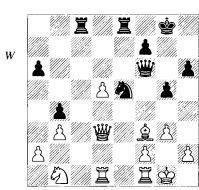
The point of Black's ...g5 idea is seen in the line 22 \@b2? \@xb2 23 \@xb2 g4, where the white bishop is lost, while after 22 \(\mathbb{L}\)e2? \(\varphi\)e4 23 營xd3 ②xg3 White loses material. 22 h4 is a weakening move, since White's inability to manoeuvre his pieces makes it hard for him to defend, whereas Black possesses more space and both open files and can easily supply more troops: 22...වe4 23 🚉 xe4 🚉 xe4 24 hxg5 🚉 xg3 25 fxg3 豐xd5 26 gxh6 罩e6! and White will not survive the attack.

22... **營xd6 23 g3** Or 23 <u>\$e</u>2 \$\arrow\$f4 24 <u>\$c</u>4 \$\arrow\$g4 25 g3 \$\bar{\pi}\$xc4! 26

bxc4 罩e2 27 c5 (27 豐d4 夏e4 28 gxf4 豐xf4 leads to mate, while 27 \underscript{\underscript{\underscript{W}}}c1 gives Black a choice between 27... \(\begin{aligned} \begin{aligned} \text{\text{\$\sigma}} \\ \text{\$\sigma} \\ \text{\$\sigma} \\ \text{\$\sigma} \\ \text{\$\sigma} \\ \text{\$\sigma} \\ \text{\$\sigma} \\ \\ \text{\$\sigma} \\ queen, and 27... 4h3+, followed by 28... \$\delta e4+, mating) 27... **当**g6 (27... **公**h3+ 28 **含**h1 **包**gxf2+ mates) 28 gxf4 營h5 and the queen moves in to give mate.

23... 夕d7! 24 臭g2

24 ②b2 豐f6!! may lead to another physical trapping after 25 ②xd3 Qxd3 26 豐xd3 ②e5 (D).



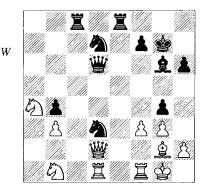
A fork on f3 will follow.

24...ッf6! 25 a3 a5 26 axb4 axb4 27 ッa2 **≜g6 28 d6**

Or: 28 ②d2 罩e2 -+; 28 h3 ②e1!? 29 罩dxe1 罩xe1 30 罩xe1 罩c2.

28...g4! 29 營d2 含g7 30 f3 30 f4 豐d4+ 31 會h1 息f5.

30...**營xd6** (D)



31 fxg4

31 ②b2 gxf3 32 &xf3 ②7e5 33 ②xd3 豐b6+ 34 營f2 公xf3+35 會g2 罩e3 is vet another line where Black has total domination.

The rest of the game was played by Kasparov with his usual energy. He first won material and then organized the decisive assault.

31... 曾d4+ 32 會h1 包f6 33 罩f4

33 h3 罩e3! 34 罩f4 竇e5 -+.

罩fd2 響e3! 37 罩xd3 罩c1!! 38 勾b2

Finally the poor knight joins the game, only to discover that it is all over. 38...灣f2! 39 夕d2 罩xd1+

39...罩e2! mates.

by the pawn-structure.

40 ②xd1 \(\mathbb{Z}\)e1+ 0-1

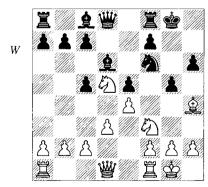
Here is a well-known example, by another of the great champions, on the theme of shutting a piece out of play. In this case, a single piece is targeted, and the restriction is made possible

Winter – Capablanca Hastings 1919

1 e4 e5 2 句f3 句c6 3 句c3 句f6 4 桌b5 桌b4 5

0-0 0-0 6 &xc6 dxc6 7 d3 &d6 8 &g5 h6 9

Black is playing against the bishop.



11 ②xf6+ 豐xf6 12 臭g3 臭g4 13 h3 臭xf3 14 豐xf3 豐xf3 15 gxf3 f6 16 曾g2

In effect, White is playing a piece down. The bishop on g3 is locked in, and can only be freed after a pawn sacrifice (h2, f4, and after ...exf4 White plays f3, 曾g2 followed by 皇g1). But this is time-consuming and will cost material.

The correct way for Black to realize his advantage is simple: attack on the queenside where after the appropriate breakthrough and the opening of the flank Black will be a piece up (the d6bishop).

The general rule is: play on the other side of the board from the excluded piece. Simplifications should generally be in your favour since they will underline the absence of this piece.

16...a5 17 a4 當f7 18 罩h1 當e6 19 h4 罩fb8 20 hxg5 hxg5 21 b3 c6 22 \(\bar{2}a2 \) b5 23 \(\bar{2}a1 \) b1 c4 24 axb5 cxb3 25 cxb3 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xb5 26 \(\mathbb{Z}\)a4 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xb3 27 d4 \(\bar{B}\) 5 28 \(\bar{B}\)c4 \(\bar{B}\)b4 29 \(\bar{B}\)xc6 \(\bar{B}\)xd4 0-1

We shall now take a piece-by-piece look at methods for domination, trapping, exclusion and restriction.

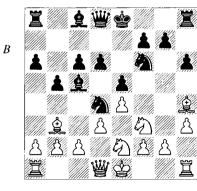
Trapping the Bishop

The easiest way to exclude or trap a bishop is to build a pawn-barrier in its way. Do not forget that bishops are 'colour-blind'. Do not be afraid that the pawns might be on the same colour squares as your own bishop. This bishop will still prosper if its main antagonist is neutralized.

Brener - V. Georgiev Neuhausen 2007

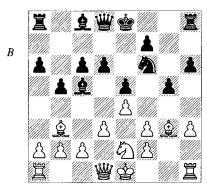
1 e4 e5 2 🖾 f3 🖾 c6 3 😩 b5 a6 4 🗟 a4 🖾 f6 5

d3 &c5 6 2c3 d6 7 &g5 h6 8 &h4 b5 9 &b3 ②d4 10 h3 c6 11 ②e2? (D)



Knowing the basic principles will help you score a lot of points, and enjoy your chess more. I can now exclude White's dark-squared bishop, just as in the classical example we saw above.

11... \triangle xf3+ 12 gxf3 g5 13 &g3 (D)



13.... **警e**7

In order to exclude the bishop, Black needs to protect the e5-pawn in advance, and not to allow a freeing pawn-break by d4.

14 營d2 臭b6!

The idea is to protect the e5-pawn with the bishop if necessary.

15 h4 \(\mathbb{Z}\)g8 16 hxg5 hxg5 17 d4 \(\mathbb{L}\)b7 18 0 - 0 - 0

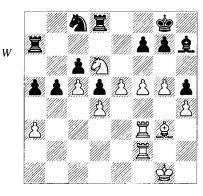
After 18 dxe5 dxe5 19 0-0-0 罩d8 20 豐c3 罩xd1+ 21 罩xdI ②d7 the idea will be ...罩h8 and ... f6 in order to entrap the bishop on g3 forever.

18...0-0-0 19 曾c3 皇c7 20 a4 c5 21 dxe5 dxe5 22 axb5 axb5 23 &d5?

White realizes that he is strategically lost and commits a tactical blunder.

23...②xd5 24 exd5 &xd5 25 罩h7 &c4 26 罩xd8+ 罩xd8 27 e3 d6 28 b3 d1+ 0-1

The same method can be successfully applied when actually trapping a piece:

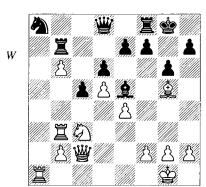


Malakhov – Jobava European Clubs Cup, Kallithea 2008

52 e6 f6 53 ②xc8 \(\)\(\) xc8 \(\)\(\) xc8 \(\)\(\) xc8 \(\)\(\)\(\)

Trapping the Knight

Tarrasch claimed that a knight near the corner is always a disgrace. While this is not always so, and indeed modern players are increasingly willing to put their knights on the edge and even near corners, care is needed, as such a knight lacks mobility and can quite easily become shut out of play or trapped.



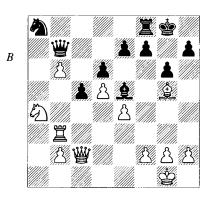
V. Georgiev - Wornath Bundesliga 2000/1

Black's knight is already in danger of exclusion. I just need to keep it in the corner with a simple tactical trick:

20 罩a7! 習d7

The pawn of e7 was hanging.

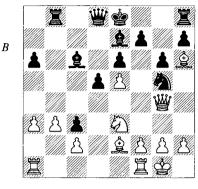
21 **基xb7 豐xb7 22 全a4** (D)



Having fixed Black's knight on a ridiculous square, I turn my eyes to the other side of the board.

22...黨b8 23 豐c4 臭d4 24 h3 f6 25 臭d2 會g7 26 &c3 &xc3 27 bxc3 營c8 28 營b5 罩b7 29 豐c6 豐b8 30 c4 會f7 31 f4 h5 32 e5 h4 33 exd6 exd6 34 \(\bar{2}\)e3 g5 35 f5 1-0

Knights need stable positions, and advanced posts ideally. Without security they may become an easy prey for practically any piece.



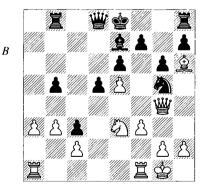
Leko - Ivanchuk Dortmund 2008

Ivanchuk did not sense the danger and proceeded with his general plan:

23....&b5?

The only move was 23... De4, to bring the knight back into its camp.

24 &xb5+ axb5 25 f3! (D)



White cuts off the knight's flight-squares, and will round it up later.

25... 學b6 26 罩ae1!

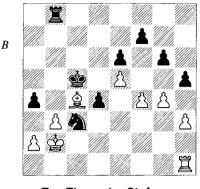
26 ≜xg5? is premature: 26...≜xg5 27 ₩xg5 h6 28 營f4 g5 wins back the piece. White need not hurry, as the knight is frozen in place on g5.

26...d4 27 ☑d1 d3+ 28 \$\displant{\text{chi}} \text{h1 dxc2 29 ᡚf2} **遠c5 30 公d3 息e3 31 息xg5 1-0**

Trapping the King

Excluding the king is an especially effective strategy in an endgame, since the king usually

needs to become an active piece and play a full role in the battle.



Tan Zhongyi - Stefanova FIDE Knockout (Women), Elista 2004

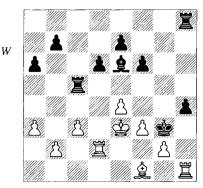
33...a3+! 34 \&a1

The king has to retreat into the corner, leaving Black practically a piece ahead in the endgame.

34... **国h8** 35 g5 曾b4 36 **国h2 国c8** 37 **国d2** ≌xc4

This exchange sacrifice is possible thanks to Black's dynamic advantage. The combined efforts of a king, knight and passed pawn easily overpower a single rook.

38 bxc4 \$\dispxc4 39 h4 d3 40 f5 \$\overline{\Omega}\$e4 41 fxg6 fxg6 42 \(\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2} \div \div \dd 43 \(\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2} \div \div \dd 3 \\ \dd 43 \\ \dd 43 \\ \dd 43 \\ \dd 43 \\ \dd 44 \\ \dd 43 \\ \dd 43 \\ \dd 43 \\ \dd 44 \\ \dd 43 \\ \dd 43 \\ \dd 44 \\ \dd 43 \\ \dd 43 \\ \dd 44 \\ \dd 43 \\ \dd 44 \\ \dd 43 \\ \dd 43 \\ \dd 44 \\ 0 - 1



S. Pereira - El Debs São Paulo 2000

White forces Black's king to the edge, where it is permanently exposed to a discovered check:

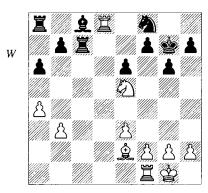
31 罩h3+! 魚xh3 32 gxh3 罩hc8

33 罩g2+ 営xh3 34 営f2! 1-0

国g3++ and 国h3# is inevitable.

Trapping the Rook

Rooks love open spaces, and this is a good reason to keep the enemy rooks behind their own pawns.

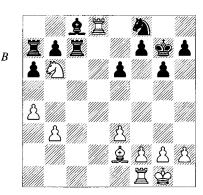


Stefanova – Dworakowska Tromsø 2007

25 Øc4!

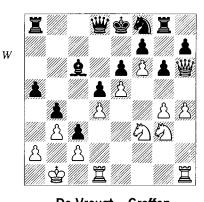
The knight is heading for b6, where it will shut in the rook forever.

25... 🖺 a7 26 🖾 b6 (D)



The knight on b6 will cost Black at least a rook, one way or another, so White is effectively an exchange ahead.

Rooks can be slain in their beds by a queen, especially if it has solid pawn support.



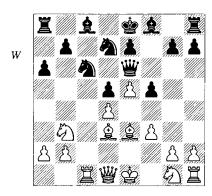
De Vreugt – Groffen Dutch Team Ch 2007/8

23 灣g7! a4 24 罩h2 1-0

Black is actually exchanging his rook for the f6-pawn.

Trapping the Queen

The queen may become very vulnerable if it joins the play too early. Due to its high value it cannot be exchanged for other pieces, and must flee whenever attacked. That's why as novices we are advised to develop our other pieces first.



Romero – J. Polgar Italian Team Ch, Arvier 2008

Black had spent too many moves in the opening moving her queen, and now it becomes a target.

14 **②h**3

White is developing his pieces with gain of tempi.

14...g6

14...豐f7 15 包g5 豐g6 (15...豐g8 16 違xf5) 16 h4 h6 17 h5 the queen is trapped.

15 ②f4 豐g8 16 ②xd5! 豐xd5 17 兔c4

The queen is trapped in mid-board. This often happens if there are many pieces left on the board. White comfortably won later.

Queens also hate closed spaces, since they cannot show their full potential and are easy prey for the lower-rated pieces.

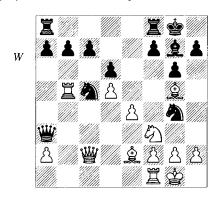


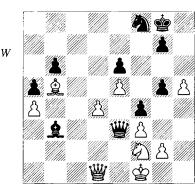
Figura - Pruijssers Bundesliga 2008/9

21 🖾 d2!

Now Black loses material.

21...5)e5? 22 5)b1 1-0

22... 資a4 23 罩xc5!.



Doettling - D. Gross Bundesliga 2007/8

Black has just played 35... 2d5-b3?, closing off his queen's emergency exit, and this will cost him dear.

36 **₩a1!**

White takes the dark squares away from the black queen, and will now trap it.

36... & d5 37 曾b2 會f7

If 37... 曾b3 38 曾xb3 皇xb3 39 包e4 包h7 40 할e2 皇d5 (40...皇c2 41 皇c4 +-) 41 할d3 할f8 42 &c4 +- White also wins.

38 &d3!

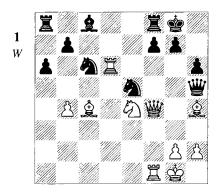
The queen is successfully surrounded, and the last finesse will be to attack it with the knight.

38...∕∆d7

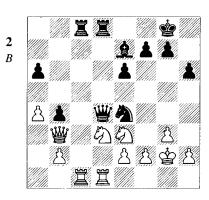
38...g4 39 營c3 gxf3 40 g4 +- with the idea

39 營c3 含e7 40 夕g4 1-0

Exercises



Trap an enemy piece!



Limitation followed by trapping.

3

В

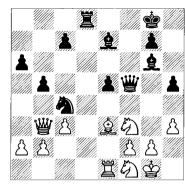
6

7

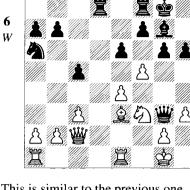
W

8

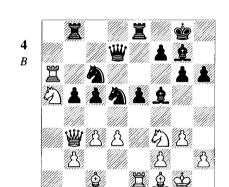
В



A piece has strayed too far from its own camp.

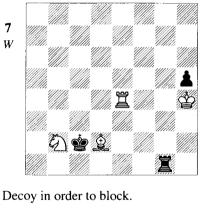


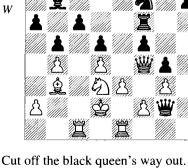
This is similar to the previous one.



There's no need for a hint here!

5





Simple chess is the best.

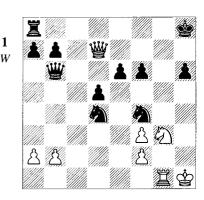
21 Practice Makes Perfect

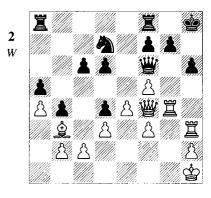
As we said at the beginning of the book, nothing can substitute for your own work on tactics. Regularly solving tactical positions will help you to understand the mechanisms described in the book, and assist the subconscious mind in absorbing many patterns and themes. It will also keep you in good shape for your competitive games. Before a tournament, we recommend you double the time you spend tackling tactical exercises in order to get into your optimal chess form.

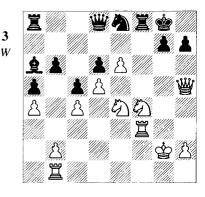
Every time when you see a diagram on a sheet of paper, spend some time to find the solution; let this become a useful habit of yours. Another useful method for tactical improvement is to follow the games of the great tacticians, such as Mikhail Tal, Garry Kasparov, Veselin Topalov, Alexander Morozevich, Alexei Shirov, Emil Sutovsky amongst many others. This will help you discover new horizons in tactical art, and fully appreciate the beauty in chess.

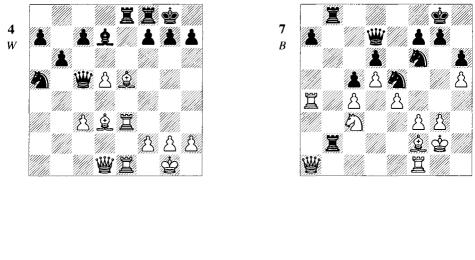
A final tip: do not be afraid to sacrifice material. You will learn more from losing a chess game with honour than you will from gaining a couple of Elo points with a chicken-hearted draw offer. Remember, we are not slaves of our ratings.

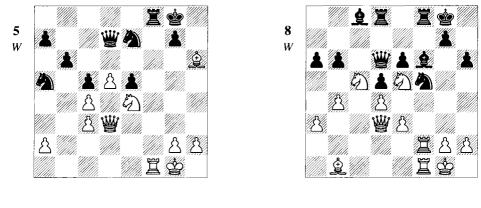
In the following fifty exercises, you are told only who is to move. You must decide for yourself if you should be looking for a win or a draw, or just trying to secure a useful advantage. Like in a real game, there are also no clues about what tactical themes the position may feature. By this stage of the book you now have all the tools you need to work that out for yourself!

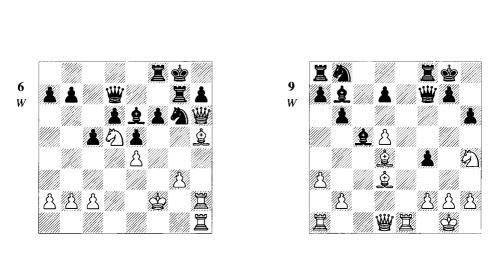


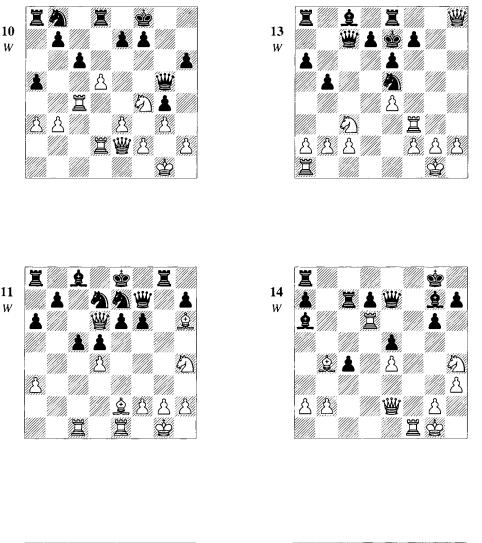


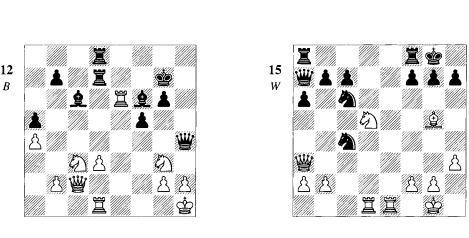


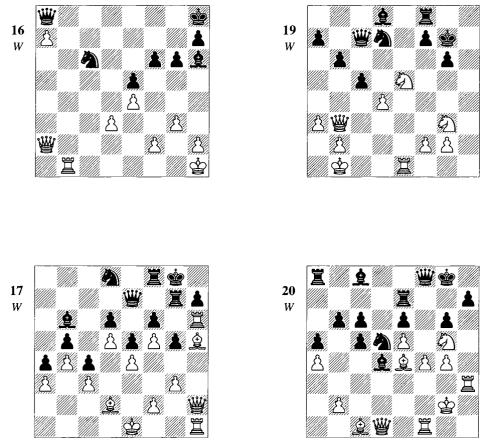


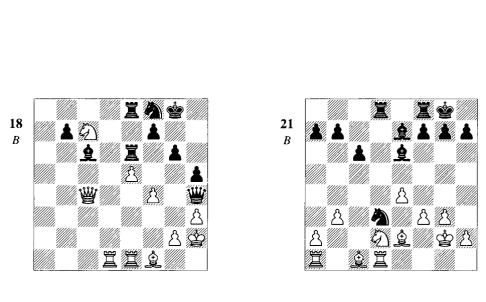


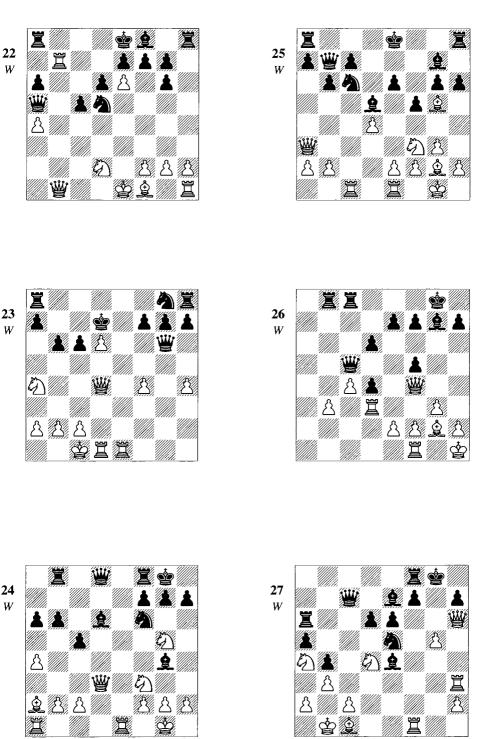








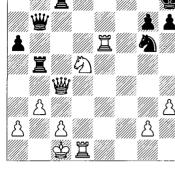




28 W

29

W



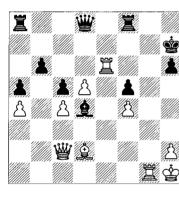




31

W





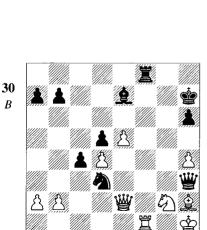


32 W

33

В





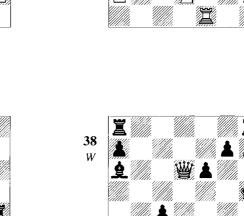
37 W



34

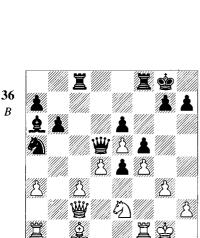
W

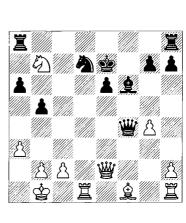
35 W



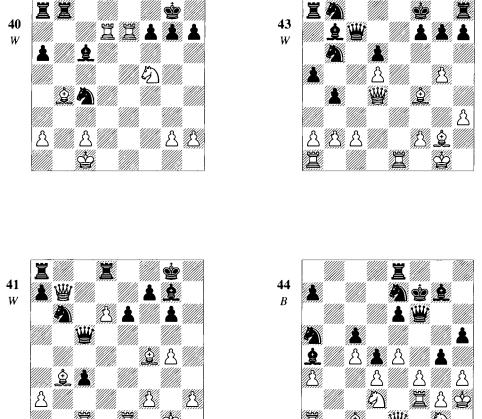
39

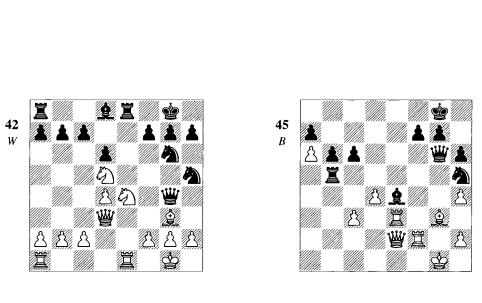
W

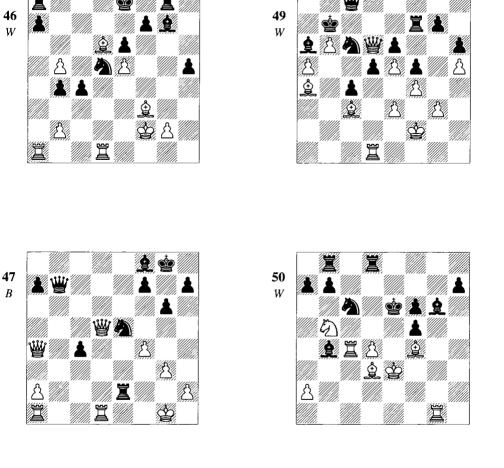


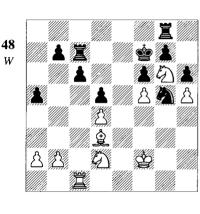


A COURSE IN CHESS TACTICS









Solutions

Chapter 1

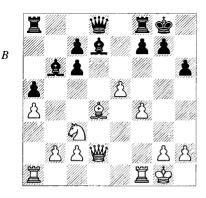
1) Nevanlinna – Sepp

Jyväskylä 1993

16...d4!

Black forces his opponent into a dreadful pin.

17 🖾 xd4 🖾 xd4 18 🎎 xd4 (D)



18...**≜g**4!

Precisely here, this move creates an additional pin, puts more pressure on the pinned bishop and prevents Adl ideas. What more could one ask of a single move?

19 国ad1 &xd1 20 国xd1 豐xd4+ 21 豐xd4 国fd8!

Black has won an exchange, and with precise play converts it into a full point.

2) Nguyen Huynh Minh – Macak Budapest 2008

18 🖾 xe5

This is easy. White wins a pawn due to the pin.

18...**.**₤f6

You had to foresee this counterpin, and see what follows:

19 公xf7! 含xf7 20 營e6+ 含f8 21 罩ac1 1-0

Black is completely tied up, \(\beta c7\) is coming, and \(21...\beta d7\) is simply bad due to \(22\) \(\delta xd6+\). This is why he decided to throw in the towel.

3) Narančić – Bistrić

Bosnian Team Ch, Neum 2008

No.

18...**€**)xa4?

Greed is usually punished, especially in chess. The knight walks into a pin, which White can exploit by simple means. He piles on as much pressure as he can, and at some point Black's defence will crack, since his queen is in front of his army (minor forces should protect first, remember?), which leaves him no chances in further exchanges.

19 **≜**f1

20 ②c4 followed by 21 \(\bar{\text{Z}}\) xa4 is the threat. **19...axb5 20** ②**xb5** \(\bar{\text{Z}}\) **6 21** \(\bar{\text{Z}}\) **3**

19...axb5 20 4\(\text{xb5}\) \(\text{\tince{\text{\te}\text{\tetx}\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\texitin{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\tex{\texict{\texit{\text{\texi{\texi{\texi}\texit{\texit{\texi{\tex{

21...**∕**2c8

The knight will provide support.

22 \(\bar{2}\) ba\(\bar{2}\) cb6\(\bar{2}\) c4

With two decisive ideas to break the defence: to add the knight by 2d2-b1-c3, or the bishop via 2e2-d1. Black is helpless.

23... ∰a6 24 ②d2 **Q**f8 25 ②c3 **Q**d7 26 ②xa4 1-0

4) Kurnosov – Dzhumaev

Agzamov Memorial, Tashkent 2008

14 dxe6! **≜g**7

15 exd7+ 1-0

5) Tatai – Vancini

Italian Ch, Chianciano 1989

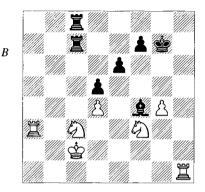
19 公xg7! 含xg7 20 營c3! 臭g4

The bishop defends the h5-square, but after White's reply, the black position collapses.

21 h3 we7 22 hxg4 wg8 23 4f5 1-0

6) Wade - Short Staunton Memorial, London 2008

39...公xc3! 40 公xc3 罩bc8 41 罩a3 (D)



So far it was easy, but Black had to foresee how he could attack the pinned knight once more.

41...臭d6!

Such backward moves are notoriously hard to spot, especially in advance. But if we are looking for ways to put additional pressure on the pinned piece, the solution should come relatively easily.

42 \(\mathbb{I}\) hal

The point is that after 42 罩b3 兔b4! White loses both his knights due to a double attack: 43 罩xb4 罩xc3+ 44 含d2 罩xf3 -+.

42...**≜**b4! -+

Anyway! Naturally, Black prefers to win a whole knight rather than an exchange.

43 曾d3 罩xc3+ 44 罩xc3 罩xc3+ 45 曾e2

Black is winning. The rest is pure technique. 45... gd6 46 Za2 gf4 47 Zb2 gg6 48 Za2

罩e3+ 49 當f2 罩e4 50 罩a4 盒c7 51 g5 盒f4 52

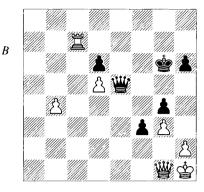
罩a7 兔e3+ 53 含g3 兔xd4 0-1

Sitnikov – An. Bykhovsky Elkana 2007

7)

Active defence is the only chance. Black abandons the rook, even though he loses it with check, but creates a drawing mechanism. Passive defence is doomed: 41... 營e8? does not work, since White has an additional attacker: 42 b5 +-.

42 罩xc7+ 罩xc7 43 罩xc7+ 當g6 44 exd5 (D)



Black has lost a rook, but activated his queen to the maximum.

44... 營e4! 45 罩c1

Or 45 營f2 營b1+ 46 營g1 營e4 =, but not 45 h3?? f2+ 46 豐g2 f1豐+ 47 曾h2 豐exg2#.

Here the players agreed a draw, with 45...f2+ 46 營g2 營e1+ 47 營f1 營e4+ as a possible finish.

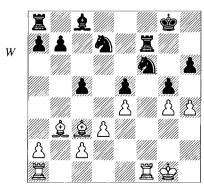
8) Pruess - Ippolito USA Ch. Tulsa 2008

20 5 xf7!

Excellent. White will coordinate his rooks and bishops and develop his initiative without any risk.

20... **三xf7 21 h4! g5** (D)

The only move. After 21... 包b6 22 &xf7+ \$\delta xf7 23 g5 ± White emerges an exchange up.



22 hxg5!

22 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xf6!? is another way to continue the attack. White gets rid of the defender, and substitutes his attacking rook with the one from al. After 22...包xf6 23 罩f1 he wins at least a pawn ②xe5 or 23... 當g7 24 ②xf7 當xf7 25 ②xe5 當e6 26 &xf6. Still, the method he chooses is preferable, since it is much harder for his opponent to defend with more pieces left on the board.

in all lines; e.g., 23...b5 24 &xf7+ \$xf7 25

22...hxg5 23 罩f5! More pressure on the pinned piece! 23...a5?!

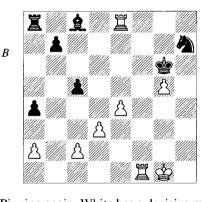
Black crumbles under the pressure. But even

after 23...\$f8! (relatively best) 24 \$xf7 (24 罩af1!? 罩e7 25 臭d2 含e8 26 臭xg5 罩g7 27 호xf6 匂xf6 28 罩xf6 罩xg4+ 29 含f2) 24...含xf7

25 Exg5 White has a rook and a pawn for two knights, is much better developed, and will most likely create another unpleasant pin.

24 罩af1 罩a6

24...a4 25 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xg5+ (before exchanging the bishop for the rook, White digests a small snack) 25...曾f8 26 &xf7 曾xf7 27 &xe5 ②xe5 28 罩xe5 含g6 29 g5 包h7 30 罩e8! (D).



Pinning again. White has a decisive material and positional advantage.

25 皇xe5 ②xe5 26 基xe5 基c6 27 基xg5+ 含f8 28 &xf7 \$xf7 29 e5 1-0

Chapter 2

1) Brkić – Andonov Porto San Giorgio 2007 34 罩d7! 1-0 34... 曾xd7 35 曾f8#.

2) Olszewski - S. Savchenko Cappelle la Grande 2008 21...罩d1+! 22 含xd1

22 纪xd1 營e2#.

22... 響f1# (0-1)

3) Delgado - Llorente Bayamo 2000

1 & h6!

This excellent move deflects the pawn, and in addition opens the g-file for the rook.

1...gxh6 ②xg4 5 &xh7+ \$h8 6 ②g6#.

2 豐h5!! 公xh5 3 公d7# (1-0)

4) Inants - Batsanin

Russian Team Ch, Dagomys 2008 22...@d5!

bearable pressure on White's position. The knight is untouchable, so White has no good options.

Black exploits both factors and creates un-

5) Tiviakov - Le Quang Moscow 2008

False! This is what White was aiming for, but he missed that Black's queen can deflect a rook before making its exit from the board.

22... e5! 23 ec1

The point is that after 23 罩xe5 罩d1+24 臭f1 2xh6 both White's rook and knight are hanging: 25 ②xf8 ②xe5 26 罩xa7 桌d5 -+. 23 豐g7+ is a nice try, but also fails: 23... wxg7 24 0xg7 \$xg7 25 b5 ②ce5 26 \$xa8 \$c5 and Black wins.

23...**当h8!**

The queen retreats with gain of tempo, creating a double attack. It is all over for White now.

24 h3 fxe6 25 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xe6 After 25 hxg4, Black can choose between 25... 包e5 and 25... 罩xf2 26 含xf2 營h2, winning

in both cases.

\$f1 \$e8 0-1

6) Markus – Bologan

Bosnian Team Ch, Neum 2008 By deflecting the main defender:

44 罩a8! 營xa8 45 營xd7

White's queen enters the battle, and now either f7 is doomed, or the queen will reach g7 via f5. Note that the black queen is too far away from the main theatre, and White's pieces are all superior to their black counterparts. 45...e3+

45...宣f8 46 營f5 e3+ 47 含h2 營a2+ 48 含h3 leads to mate on g7.
46 含h2 罩e6 47 含 xe6 營f8 48 營c8 d2

46 曾h2 罩e6 47 皇xe6 豐f8 48 豐c8 d2 48...e2 49 豐xf8+ 曾xf8 50 d7.

49 豐xf8+ 含xf8 50 含g4 含e8 51 含g2 e2 52 ②xe2 含d7 53 含f2 含xd6 54 含e3 1-0

7) Shirov – Ivanchuk Foros 2008

...then the f3-pawn will be under attack, and

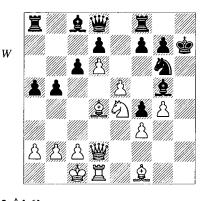
White's defences will be in ruins. This can be achieved with a study-like deflection which also disrupts the cooperation between the white

32...罩d3!! 33 **②xd**3

⊉h7.

8) Toczek – Wozniak
Poland 1999

Poland 1999 1 **≝xh7!! \$\delta kh7** (D)



2 & b6!

The main defender, as usual, is the queen. After its deflection, the idea behind White's first move becomes clear.

- 2... 響xb6 3 ②xg5+ 常g8
- 3... \$\delta\$h6 allows mate in two: 4 \delta\$h2+ \delta\$xg5 5 \delta\$h5#.
 4 \delta\$h2 \delta\$e3+ 5 \delta\$b1 \delta\$e8 6 \delta\$d3 \delta\$xd3
- The only move. Both 6...豐xe5 7 兔xg6 fxg6 8 豐h7+ 含f8 9 豐h8# and 6...豐d4 7 罩h1 lead to mate.

7 cxd3 罩xe5 8 罩h1 罩xg5 9 營h7+ 含f8 10 營h8+! 1-0

Chapter 3

1) G. Jones – Hasan Hastings 2007/8

32 營a3+! 1-0

2) Flindt – Bulski
Politiken Cup, Elsinore 2008
22... \(\begin{align*}
24 - \begin{align*}
25 - \begin{align*}
26 - \begin{align*}
27 - \begin{align*}
27 - \begin{align*}
28 - \begin{align*}
29 - \begin{align*}
29 - \begin{align*}
20 - \begin{al

3) Wang Puchen – Bui Vinh
Budapest 2008

42... \(\frac{1}{2}\) xf2! 0-1

4) Gorovykh – Shimanov St Petersburg 2008

And a very important one. This is the queen, and after it is deflected away, Black's king is hunted down on the queenside.

21 **Qe4! 營xe4 22 營d6+ 含b5 23 置fb1+** 含a5 24 **Qd2+ 1-0**

K. Stein – Movsesian

European Clubs Cup, Panormo 2001
The rook must protect h3, and so can be overloaded:

35... #f1!! 36 @xe5+ dxe5

White is facing an impossible choice, either mate after 37 罩xf1 罩xh3+ 38 當g4 Qd7# or losing a whole rook in case of 37 f3 豐xh1. Therefore...

0-1

5)

Akobian – Onishchuk *Philadelphia (blitz) 2002*

White opens the f-file to force Black to defend his rook.

1 **Zxg5! fxg5**And now he enjoys the overload created:

2 營xc7!! 公d7 2... 基xf2 3 營xe7 基f1+ 4 含a2 +-.

3 營xd7! 1-0

- 7) A. Manvelian (end of study) 1st Prize, Zadachy i Etiudy, 1997 1 響f3+ 兔b3 2 響c3!! bxc3 3 兔d6#
- 8) G. Singh Harikrishna *Kolkata 2001* 36...分f4!? 37 罩xf4??

neglects his back rank.

This natural move is a fatal error, as White

tralizing the danger and claiming a modest advantage after 37... **基**c4 (37... **豐**xg4? 38 **基**xf4) 38 豐f3, or 37 ②f2!, when 37...豐xb2? (37... ②xd5 38 省e4 is pleasant for White) loses to 38 省h4

②e2+39會h1 罩e740 ②e4 with an overwhelm-

ing attack. Now Black finds a killing shot:

37....皇d4+! 0-1

White resigned in view of: 38 罩xd4 豐el#; 38 **含**h1 **營**e1+ is also mate: 38 cxd4 **〇**c1+.

Chapter 4

1) Knott – S. Haslinger Hastings 2007/8

48...**ℤe**4!

Decoying the king into a promotion check. 49 含xe4 b1当+ 0-1

2) C. Horvath - Brnas Croatia Cup, Pula 2001

23 e6! **曾xe6 24 Qc4 1-0**

The queen is trapped.

3) Dudzinski – Mielczarski Ustron 2008

26 營h8+ 含f7 27 **皇**xg6+! 含xg6 27... **公**xg6 28 罩h7#.

28 **省h5+**

28 罩g3+ 含f5 29 營h5+ +-. 1-0

28...會g7 29 罩g3+ +-.

4) H. Hunt - Petrenko

Calvia (Women's Olympiad) 2004

White first interposes on the b-file. 62 罩b6! 罩b1+ 63 含a6 罩a1+ 64 含b5 罩b1+

65 全6 罩c1+ Now she drags her opponent's rook close to

her king to escape from the perpetual check: 66 Qc4! Zxc4+ 67 含b5 Zb4+ 68 含c5 Zg4

69 b8豐 盒e3+ 70 含d5 盒xb6 71 豐xe5+ 1-0

De Jong - L. Johannessen 5)

European Clubs Cup, Kemer 2007 37... 基xb7 38 a8豐+ 含g7 39 豐xb7+.

H. Rinck 6)

Deutsche Schachzeitung, 1903

With simple moves White first destroys an important pawn, then chases the queen to a bad

square, traps and finally wins it. The queen has the powers of both bishop and rook, but in this

study the combined efforts of these two individual pieces prove of greater value: 1 罩a8! 幽a2 1...豐xa8 2 身f3+; for 1...豐h7 2 身g6 see the

2 罩xa4! 豐g8

2... 對xa4 3 &e8+. 3 国a8! 豐h7 4 臭g6! 豐xg6 5 国a6+

White's skewer wins Black's queen and the game.

> Corrales Jimenez – Hungaski World Junior Ch. Erevan 2007

Decoying the queen onto a mined square.

30...\₩xc7

會f8 33 罩xh7.

7)

Black lacks time to take the queen: 30... 42xh7 31 罩fxf7+ 含g8 (31...含e8 32 罩ce7#) 32 罩xg7+

31 罩xf6+ &xf6

The only move since 31... \$\div 8\$ allows mate

32 **曾xc7** White has won back the sacrificed piece and

②f5 罩f4 40 豐d3 臭f6 41 ②g3+ 含f7 42 豐h7+

emerged two pawns ahead. He was able to capitalize on his material advantage:

32...罩ac8 33 豐f4 會f7 34 ②e3 罩d4 35 豐f3 罩c1+ 36 �h2 罩c5 37 g4 �g6 38 �g2 �g5 39

8) V. Petkov - Sanchez Guirado Collado Villalba 2008

21 ♠xa7+! �c7 22 ♠axc6 bxc6 23 ♠xc6!

\$e6 43 €h5 1-0

âxe1 24 ②xa5+ �b6

Black's moves are all forced; otherwise he loses material.

25 罩c6+! 曾xa5 26 罩a6+ 曾b4 27 a3+ 曾b3 28 \(\beta\)b6+ \(\dec{\phi}\)a4

And now comes the most pleasant moment

in the combination – a silent deadly move. 29 含a2! As we said before - it doesn't take many

pieces to mate a lone king out in the open. 29...罩xh1 30 b3+ 含a5 31 罩a6# (1-0)

Chapter 5

1) Wehner – A. Rotstein

German Ch, Bad Wörishofen 2008

In principle it was a good idea, but there is a major tactical flaw here:

12...**②eg4!** 13 fxg4 **②**xg4 0-1

(The initial moves were 1 e4 c5 2 包f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 包xd4 包c6 5 包c3 豐c7 6 皇e3 a6 7 豐d2 包f6 8 f3 包e5 9 a3 b5 10 皇d3 皇b7 11 0-0

≜c5 12 ②b3.)

2) Alexandrov – Danin

Minsk 2006
White's king and rook are situated on the same diagonal, so line clearance should spring to mind!

24...②xd5!

Black is an exchange down, but makes use of the insecure position of the opponent's king as well as a simple geometrical motif.

25 exd5 營b6+

Double attack. 26 曾e1 豐xa7

The tables have turned. Now Black is a healthy pawn up and has a decisive attack.

27 h5 營e3

Threatening a discovered attack.

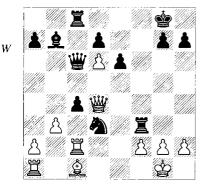
28 \\ d1 c3 0-1

3) Carron – Nemet

Swiss Ch, Silvaplana 2003

The first move is quite obvious: Black annihilates an important defender and opens the long diagonal.

21...罩xf3! (D)



However, White has a zwischenzug:

22 **罩xc4**

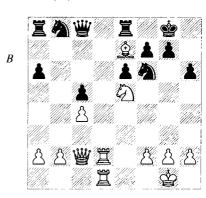
It was important to see this detail in advance, and to have foreseen the brilliant finish:

22...罩e3!! 0-1

4) Tiviakov – Ponomariov

5) Aronian – Karpov Hoogeveen 2003

27 臭e7! (D)



White opens the d-file for his rooks, takes away the d7-square from his opponent's knights, and breaks open Black's shelter on the kingside.

6) Esquivel – Gongora Cuba 2002

A double attack deflects Black's blockading piece:

Or: 2...曾g6 3 &xb5 ②cxd6 4 &c6 曾f7 5 b5 +-; 2...曾g7 3 &xb5 ②exd6 4 &d7 +-.

3 d7 1-0

The knights are too clumsy to stop a passed pawn that is right next to them.

7) An. Perez – Ordonez Cuba 2003

1 罩h3! 拿xe4

After 1...h6 2 \(\frac{1}{2}\)xd6 White threatens to take on h6 with the rook, and 2...f6 3 \(\frac{1}{2}\)dl promises White a solid pawn and a winning position. Nevertheless, after the text-move it looks as if the attack has ended. However...

2 **Qd5!**

This double attack aims to deflect Black's defender of h7.

2...\&g6!?

A clever move, but insufficient to save the game.

3 營xg6! fxg6 4 罩xh7+! 1-0

Facing 4...會xh7 5 罩h4#, Black threw in the towel.

8) Y. Perez – L. Martinez (variation)

Cuba 2004

By decoying the king into a discovered at-

tack, Black bags a mighty trophy - the white queen:

1...食h2+!! 2 曾xh2 皇d7+ 3 曾g1

And since he can operate with check, before capturing the queen, Black wins two minor

pieces for a rook thanks to an overload: 3...罩xf1+! 4 含xf1 營xh1+ 5 罩g1 營h3+ 6

Chapter 6

0 - 1

⊈e1 ⊈xa4 -+

1) Fedorov - Lastin Voronezh 2007

26... wxh2+! 27 sxh2 2g4+ 28 sg1 2xe3

Black realized his material advantage: 29 罩f3 勾g4 30 勾f4 罩g7 31 勾xd5 罩d8 32

ĝe2 36 Zc1 e4 37 b3 Zf7 38 Zxg4+ 2xg4 39

②xc4 \(\bar{\pi} d1 \) 40 \(\bar{\pi} xd1 \) \(\alpha xd1 \) 41 \(\bar{\pi} xa5 \) \(\alpha e2 \) 42 ②c2 &d3 43 ②e3 \$g7 44 ②ac4 &xc4 45 夕xc4 罩f6 46 a5 会f7 47 夕d2 罩f4 48 夕c4 含e6

2) M. Makarov – Ibragimov

Russian Ch. Samara 2000

It took only one move for the Russian GM to deal with his colleague:

22 罩c6! 1-0 22... 費xc6 23 分e7+.

3) Praznik – Stojanović Bled 2008

Not at all:

28 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xf6+! 1-0

White frees a square for a fork, and opens a line for the remaining rook. Thanks to that, Black cannot protect his e8-rook.

4) Fedorowicz - Vaganian Reykjavik (Summit) 1990

24 罩h8+! 1-0

This decoys Black's king into the corner as Ø)xf7+.

5) Stojanović – Dumpor

Bosnian Team Ch. Neum 2008

First Black advances his knight: 39...包f3+ 40 曾f1 (D)

40 當h1 does not help either due to 40... 響e6

with the decisive threat of 41... 營h3#. В

And now comes the rook:

40...罩b1+! 0-1

A beautiful deflection. Now three different forks are possible: 41 \$\dig 2 \Odd e1+, 41 \$\dig e2 \Odd d4+ and 41 曾xb1 公d2+.

Short - Timman 6)

Staunton Memorial, London 2008 The correct solution is 19 4 d6!! cxd6 (or

Instead there followed 19 当b3? 当xb3 20 axb3 堂c8 21 罩xa7 and while White was still

better, the win is not easy at all, and later Short

7) P. Nikolić - Bindrich

European Ch, Plovdiv 2008

Answer B is correct. 49...Øf3+??

even lost on time.

When going for a combination, we must never forget our opponent's resources, no matter how ridiculous they may look.

50 資xf3!

Black was obviously counting on 50 &xf3? 豐xf4+ 51 當g2 豐g5+ 52 當h2 魚xf3 with an

edge for Black. However, he forgot that White may take the knight with another piece. No wonder - this type of psychological failing is common even in the practice of experienced grandmasters. Most people simplify their calculation by excluding the 'unnecessary' lines.

After 50... £xf3 White wins back the queen thanks to the fork 51 2e6+ \$e7 52 2xg5 and emerges a piece ahead.

8) F. Chin – Van Weersel British League (4NCL) 2007/8

In the game White hurried to perform a

study-like shot:

25 **쌀e6?**

However, this appears to be enough only for perpetual check. He needed to deflect Black's queen away from the vital e7-square instead by

is that after 26...fxe6 27 \(\mathbb{Z}xg7+ \(\mathbb{C}h8 \) 28 \(\mathbb{Z}h7+ \)

\$\delta g8\$, the e7-square is not protected and so there follows 29 2e7#) 27 2e7+ \$h7 28 2xg6 fxe6 29 ②xf8+ \$\degree g8 30 ③xe6 +-. 25...fxe6 26 罩xg7+ \$h8 27 罩h7+ \$g8 28

罩g7+ 含h8 29 罩h7+ 1/2-1/2

Chapter 7

1) Sokolov – Oll

Pärnu 1996

White only needs to decoy the enemy king

onto a mined square: 16 罩d8+! 含xd8 17 公xf7+ 含e7 18 当xf4

曾xf7 19 息c4+ 曾g7 20 罩d1 息f5 21 豐c7+ \$h6 22 h3 1-0

2) Cmilyte - Borić European Clubs Cup (women), Kallithea 2008

White found a beautiful win:

23 ②xc6! bxc6

23... \ xa1 24 \ d\ d8!.

24 罩d7! 1-0

24... **營**xb3 25 **基**xg7+ **含**h8 26 **基**xg6+.

3) Shoker - A. Hernandez Muñoz Malaga 2008

White's knight prevents him from delivering a decisive discovered check. The b1-h7 diagonal must be cleared!

26 ②f8+! 1-0 26. 罩xf8 27 &e4+.

Briscoe – Marlow

4) British League (4NCL) 2007/8

Black is far behind in development. White

must not give him time to finish it. 19 罩xd5! \$\dot{\$\dot{\$\dot{\$\geq}\$}}\$xd5 20 罩d1+ \$\dot{\$\dot{\$\dot{\$\geq}\$}}\$66 21 罩d6+ 會c7 22 罩xg6+ 會c8 23 罩xg7 公c6 1-0

5) Efremov – Soloviev corr. 2004

1 臭g4!! 罩xd3 2 罩xe8+ 當d7

2... 堂c7 3 罩xd3 c4 (3... 堂b6 4 罩e7 and White doubles his rooks on the seventh rank) 4 \(\begin{aligned} \Beta d7+! \end{aligned} \)

\$\delta xd7 5 f6+ \$\delta xe8 6 fxg7 +-. 3 f6+! 1-0

Black resigned, spotting the line 3... \$\displace xe8 4 the rebirth of White's queen.

Čabrilo – Matović 6)

Yugoslav Team Ch, Vrnjačka Banja 1999 For a successful discovered attack, White

needs to clear a line, and decoy the enemy king. 36 罩h7+! 含xh7 37 管xg8+! Not 37 \(\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{d}}}} \) d3+?? f5 -+.

37...\$xg8 38 e7+ \$g7 39 e8營 營e1+ 40 會g2 營d2+ 41 含h3 +-

Alexandrova – Chorvatova 7) Hlohovec 1996

Yes, this was an easy nut to crack: 20 4 d5! exd5 21 & xh7+ 1-0

8) Negi – Grivas Wijk aan Zee 2008

The first move is obvious: White takes a pawn thanks to the discovered attack, but will drop his proud knight on e5. Still, destroying Black's castled position should have encouraged you to press on with your analysis of this line.

20 **夏xg6! 豐xe5 21 夏xh7+! ②xh7**

Or: 21...曾xh7 22 營h3+曾g8 23 皇xf6+ 營g5 24 罩xg5#; 21...會h8 22 息c2 +--. 22 \(\hat{L}\)f4+

And not 22 \(\exists f6+??\), when the attacking piece remains unprotected and it is Black who wins after 22... wxg3 23 hxg3 &xf6.

Black has enough material for the moment, but White has additional prey in his sights:

24 \(\begin{align*}
 24 \(\begin{align*}
 24 \(\begin{align*}
 25 \(\begin{align*}
 2xb7 \(\begin{align*}
 2cd8 26 \(\begin{align*}
 8h3 \\ \begin{align*}

27 兔h6 萬g8 28 萬xf7 萬g1+ 29 含c2 1-0

Chapter 8

1) Davies – Dive

Wrexham 1994

31 \(\begin{align*}
 32 \(\beta \) + 1-0

23 \(\beta \) + 24 \(\beta \) (6# will follow

33 **基**g8+ and 34 **豐**g6# will follow.

2) Lujan – Tkeshelashvili Stockholm (rapid) 2008

20 ②e5! fxe5 21 ♠xb7 ∰d6 22 ②e4! 1-0 Funnily enough, the black queen is trapped!

3) Skembris – Timman *Match (game 1), Corfu 1993*25 ②xe6! 1-0

25...fxe6 26 \(\mathbb{Z}\) b7 and mate is unavoidable.

4) Volokitin – Nanu European Ch, Plovdiv 2008

31 **黨xh6+! 含g8**In case of 31...含xh6 the king is decoyed in front of its pieces, and White mates thanks to the vacant h3-square for his queen: 32 營h3+

32 營h3 營c7 33 營h4 1-0

會g6 33 營h5#.

5) Gleizerov – Alavkin Kaluga 2003

Z3 營f6!A multi-purpose move. It breaks up Black's

pawn-shield, threatens mate, and frees a line for the rook to finish the job. 1-0

1-0 23...gxf6 24 罩g3+ \$\pm\$h8 25 \$\pm\$xf6#.

6) Nayer – Ftačnik
Bundesliga 2007/8

₩xa8+ ᡚxa8 20 ᡚc6+.

18 **②e5!**With this beautiful blow White opens the d-file towards the king and with energetic play

soon mates it. 19 ②f7# is the threat.

18...fxe5

18...fxe5
In case of 18... ■h7 above everything else
White can win a rook using a knight fork: 19

19 dxe5
Black now tries to close the d-file, but White

responds by removing all the bishop's defenders.

19...&c4 20 \(\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \delta \

室**xd5+! 1-0** 22...包xd5 (22...豐xd5 23 兔xb6+) 23 豐d7#.

7) Jelica – Lujan *Rijeka 2008*

Rijeka 2008

29... xf5!

This piece cannot play a major

This piece cannot play a major role in the attack, but the queen will make grateful use of the

square it has vacated.

30 exf5

30 基xf5 基h4#; it would have been wiser for White to play on a pawn down.

Russian Junior Ch, St Petersburg 2008 27...包xb3! 28 包xb3 28 豐xb5 冨a1#; 28 豐xb3 冨xc1+ nets a whole queen.

Lovkov - Siugirov

28... 營e2! 0-1This is also a double attack: 29 營d2 營xg4 or 29 罩c1 營d3+.

8)

Chanter 9

Chapter 9

1) Sergienko – Rustemov Russian Ch, Samara 2000

39...빨h2+! 0-1 A variation on the standard smothered mate follows: 40 신xh2 신g3#.

2) Casper – Brener Bundesliga 2007/8

27 竇g7+! 1-0

White decoys the rook to g7 where it closes

함h8 29 Id8+ Ig8 30 Ixg8#.

3) Li Shilong – Wang Yuo

3) Li Shilong – Wang Yue Chinese Ch, Wuxi 2006

33...b3!
Black blocks the diagonal, and so destroys the defensive mechanism 33...\(\int\)d8 34 \(\oxeda{a}\)a4.

off the black king's exit. 27... \sum xg7 28 6f6+

34 axb3 2 d8 35 b4 \(\)\(\)\(\)\(\)

4) Nayer - Nepomniashchy Moscow 2006 Black could have won on the spot had he

have seen an unusual smothered mate idea, combined with decoy: 31...g4! 32 \mathbb{\mathbb{\mathbb{g}}}g3 and now comes the amazing 32... 響f1+!!. White is mated after both 33 \$\dispxf1 \boxdap h1# and 33 \boxdap xf1

©e2#. In the game he played 31... b5? and later

5) Geirnaert - Pel Groningen 2008

Of course not! 55...罩5g7??

lost.

My (DB) good friend Bonno Pel was very upset about this mistake after the game: "I saw this position from miles and miles away, but then in

time-trouble something made me move my rook away..." After some neutral move like 55... 全e7 56 ②xg5 罩xg5 or, even better, 55...當c7 56 ②xg5 罩xg5 it is a simple fortress thanks to the

blockade. White cannot improve his position. 56 g5 皇xg5 57 曾f5 罩f8+ 58 曾e4 罩fg8 59 ⟨□xg5 □xg5 60 □xg5 hxg5 61 h6

White got the upper hand and later won.

6) Rafizadeh - L. Truong Australian Under-18 Ch. Canberra 2001

13 營xg7!! White decoys the rook to a very bad square

discovered attack now. 13...罩xg7 14 ②f6+ 當f8 15 ②xd7+ 當e8 15...曾g8 16 公f6+ 曾h8 17 罩xd8+ 罩xd8 18 **\$** h6 +−

where it blocks the king. Black cannot prevent a

16 公f6+ 會f8 17 罩xd8+ 罩xd8 18 桌h6 +-

7) Kantsler – Malisov

Modein 2000 White is seeking a perpetual by blocking off

the king's escape-route, and this proved success-

ful in the game after 1...fxg5? 2 \(\begin{aligned} 2h7+! \\ \\ \\ xh7 \end{aligned} \) **豐xf7+ 當h6 4 豐f8+ 當h7** (4...當h5?? 5 豐h8#) 5 **營f7+** ½-½. 1...分f5? is also met by 2 罩h7+! (2

gxf6+? 曾g8 3 豐a7 包g5 -+) 2...曾xh7 3 豐xf7+ \$\delta\$h8 (3...\$\delta\$g7?? 4 gxf6 +-) 4 \delta\$f8+ (4 gxf6? 豐c8 -+) 4...當h7 5 豐f7+, with a draw, while Black can even lose: 1... 幽e6?? 2 gxf6+ 當g8 (2... 響xf6 3 罩h7+! +-) 3 罩h8+! 會xh8 4 響f8+

8) Vila Gazquez – Pogorelov

1... **\$g8!** solves Black's problems and wins,

as 2 罩h7? allows 2... 響xf3+, and otherwise

Linares (open) 2005 1...h2+! 2 含xh2 息f3!

White has nothing; e.g., 2 gxf6 ∅f5.

The key move. The bishop blocks the f-

pawn, thus creating a mating-net, and controls

the d1-square, not permitting White to exchange rooks. Black now needs to get to the h-file

3 罩fe1 This loses at once, but other defences also

somehow.

a) 3 罩g1 &xc5!! 4 &xc5 含g6 5 罩g2 罩h7+ 6 曾gl 罩d8 -+.

b) 3 g5!? f5 and now: bl) 4 罩ac1 罩d8! 5 桌xd8 罩xd8 6 罩c4 e4

b2) 4 g4 f4 (4...\(\hat{\pm}xg5!\)? has the point 5 c6

fail, as shown by Pogorelov:

臭f4+6 曾g1 罩d8!) 5 罩g1 曾g6 6 罩g2 臭xc5 7 এxc5 罩h7+ 8 含g1 罩d8 −+ with the idea ...罩dh8. b3) 4 罩g1 含g6! (and not 4... & xc5? 5 & xc5

함g6 6 호f8 함xg5 7 필g2 필h7+ 8 함g1 필d8 9 国h2!!, when White turns the tables in his favour) 5 c6 (5 罩g2 兔xc5 6 兔xc5 罩h7+ 7 含g1 国d8) 5....皇xc6 6 包a7 皇f3 7 国g2 皇c5 8 皇xc5

国h7+9曾g1 国d8 10 公c6 皇xc6 11 f4 皇xg2 12

會xg2 罩d2+ 13 桌f2 罩c7 -+.

Chapter 10

34 含xf1 罩a1+ 0-1

1)

Claverie – Lemos Fischer Memorial.

Villa Martelli 2008 31...豐a1+! 32 臭f1 勾f3+ 33 �g2 豐xf1+!

Shaked - Cherniaev 2)

New York 1993

...and it hinders White's access to the sev-

enth rank, and must be destroyed: 28 罩xe4! fxe4 29 罩b7 h5

Now a subtle queen manoeuvre forces resig-30 營e3! g5 31 營xe4! 1-0

\$b1 1-0

3) P. Carlsson - Braun

Wijk aan Zee 2008 We hope you noticed that Black has left his

king in the centre. Two of its defenders can be removed (destroyed or deflected), and the last one can be blocked.

26 罩xc6! 罩xc6 27 營d7+ 含f8 28 包g5

Mate is threatened on f7 and d8, and Black can't stop both.

28...公d6 29 罩xd6 營e1+ 30 罩d1 營e3+ 31

4) Ushenina – Dvoirys

Moscow 2008

White's bishops and queen are perfectly placed, and Black is holding his position to-

gether thanks only to his excellent knight. It should be annihilated by a piece that isn't play-

ing a leading role in the attack: 26 罩e5!

26 罩xe6? fxe6 27 &xe6+ 含h8 28 &xf5 might look attractive if you miss the solution,

but after 28... Le2! the tables will turn in Black's

favour (Aagaard). 1-0 Black resigned, as after 26...g6 27 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xf5 exf5

5) Afek - Gershaev

28 營d4 he is mated.

&xe6+ +-.

Israel 1999 White has a series of three violent sacrifices

that remove two defenders and open a vital diagonal:

1 罩xe4! dxe4 2 兔e5+! 兔xe5 3 罩xf5! 1-0 Black resigned in view of 3... 對h8 4 罩f7+

曾g8 5 罩xe7+ 曾f8 6 罩f7+ 曾g8 7 罩f6+ 曾g7 8 營d7# or 3...e6 4 營h6+ 含g8 5 罩f8+! 營xf8 6

6) J. Caceres - Nogueiras Montreal (open) 2002

The d4-bishop is too strong to be left on the board. It both pins the white knight and defends on the long diagonal. After its removal, the dark squares in Black's camp will be indefensible.

1 罩xd4! 罩xd4 2 勺xf5 罩e4

White already has two pawns for the exchange, and his opponent cannot return the exchange. 2... 響f6 3 ②xd4 響xd4+ 4 會h1 d5 5 **營xd4+ +-.**

3 營c3+ 罩e5 4 公xd6! 1-0

7) Handke - H. Hernandez

Havana 2003

And without a bishop to defend them, Black's

days are numbered.

Or: 24... **Ze**8 25 **Q**xf7+! **含**xf7 26 **肾**f6+ **含**g8

25 罩e1! 1-0 25... **基xd6** 26 **基e8#**.

8) Bojković – J. Houska

Belgrade (women) 2008 21 皇xg7! 當xg7 There is no time for 21... \$\mathbb{L}\$xf3? 22 当h6.

22 ②h5+ 含f8 22...會g6 23 營f4 +--.

23 營h6+ 含e7 24 食xf7!

White has annihilated the pawn-shield and now threatens various tactical strikes. Her position is winning.

24...\$d7 25 &xe8+ \$c7 26 \$\alpha\$f6 &xf3 27 豐g7+ �b8 28 gxf3 c4 29 幻d7+ �c8 30 罩e1 ②c2 31 Ze7 &xd4 32 ②b6+ &xb6 33 axb6 ₩xb6 34 &c6 1-0

Chapter 11

1) Gubaydulin – Kasyan Uzbek Ch. Tashkent 2008

32...₩g2+!

Unblocking the pawn, and clearing an important line.

36 含h3 曾g3#.

2) Morchiashvili – S. Novikov European Ch, Plovdiv 2008

Black's own rook is hindering the pawn's dreams. So it is sacrificed:

45...罩d2+!

国d7+ 含b6 47 国d8, when White's rook can halt the a-pawn.

46 當xd2 a2 47 g4 a1營

The rook and the pawn were 'exchanged' for a queen.

48 gxf5 營d4+ 49 含c2 c4 50 f6 營d3+ 51 含b2 0-1

3) L'Ami – Spoelman Wijk aan Zee 2008

Black wins an exchange:

35...②e3! 36 ②b3

He had seen the zwischenzug 36 fxe3 c2!,

gaining the decisive tempo.

36...公xf1 37 營xf1 營f3 0-1

4) Narciso Dublan – Krivoruchko

European Ch, Plovdiv 2008

The young Ukrainian GM Yuri Krivoruchko loudly announced his presence to the world at the 2008 European Championship, where he qualified for the World Cup. Here is one of his

80...e121: 0-1

豐xe8 stalemate!

wins:

avoid it

The hasty 80...el 響? would lead to a huge disappointment after 81 響g6+! \$\\$g8 82 \$\\$e8+!

We should note that Black has several other ways to win, including the dramatic 80... 響xf4+81 gxf4 e1響+, mating with checks, and the prosaic 80... 響d3, threatening 81... 響d8+ and so overloading the white queen. Your basic task here was to notice the stalemate defence and

5) Nijboer – Naumkin

Hoogeveen 2008

White finds a pretty way to use his passed pawn.

31 **基xd8 基xd8 32 豐f6! 豐f8** 32...gxf6 33 **基**g8+ **基**xg8 34 fxg8**豐**#.

33 **Äxg7 1-0**

6) S. Williams – G. Jones Bunratty 2008

But first Black should remove the defender of the back rank:

34... 基c5+ 35 曾d2 基xc1 36 曾xc1 e3!

Now the breakthrough.
37 罩g1

37 fxe3 f2.

37...**≜d4**!

This is a precise move that keeps the pawns intact and creates a duo of passed pawns.

38 **Eh1 e2 39 曾d2 皇xf2 40 a3** Black is not in a hurry now. He simply im-

proves his pieces before collecting the point. 40... 全h7 41 b4 axb4 42 axb4 全h6 43 b5

e1쌜+ 44 ଞxe1 호xe1+ 45 \$xe1 \$xh5 46 \$f2 \$g4 0-1

7) R. Martin – R. Hernandez Benasque 2000

...endgame! 1...€\xf6!

The passive 1... £f8 2 bxa3 bxa3 3 \(\bar{a}\)b1 allows White the initiative.

2 ②xf6+ 豐xf6 3 豐xf6

Many roads lead to Rome after 3 營d2; for instance, 3...②e2+4 營xe2 axb2 5 食xb2 營xb2.

3... \(\hat{2}xf6 \) \(\frac{1}{2}xf6 \) \(\frac{1}{2}xc2 \) \(\frac{1}{2}b1 \)
5 \(\hat{2}xa3 \) \(\frac{1}{2}xa1 \) 6 \(\frac{1}{2}xd6 \) \(\frac{1}{2}c2 \) -+.

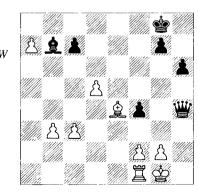
After all the forced exchanges, the breakthrough proves decisive:

5...b3!! 0-1

8) Hendriks – Michalczak Dieren 2008

Some moves earlier White sacrificed his queen in order to create a strong passed pawn. Now he carefully advances it, and creates additional passed pawns too.

29 a7 **a**b7 (D)



30 d6!

For the sake of promotion, White is ready to part with the bishop. He will, of course, gain some tempi in return.

30...ዿxe4

30...c6 31 d7 營d8 32 罩d1 forces Black to block the pawn with his most powerful piece. White wins thanks to the plan of b4-b5.

31 dxc7 營g4 32 f3 臭xf3

a8∰ 1-0

After 32...豐c8 33 fxe4 豐a6 34 \circ ha2 (with the idea \(\bar{a} \) a1) 34...\(\circ \hat{h} \)7, White can choose 35 \(\bar{a} \)xf4, when the rook will support the pawns, while advancing the third passed pawn by 35 e5 is also good enough.

33 \(\bar{a} \)xf3 \(\bar{c} \)8 34 \(\bar{a} \)xf4 \(\bar{c} \)h7 35 \(\bar{a} \)c4 g5 36

Chapter 12

1) I. Gonzalez – Pulido Havana 2001

1 **營e6+! 含h8**Black's problem is obvious after 1... **基xe6** 2 **基xc8+ 含f7** (2... **基e8** 3 **基xe8+ 含f7** 4 **公**g5+) 3 **公**g5++-.

2 **響xc8! 1-0**

2) Fressinet – Macieja European Ch, Plovdiv 2008

European Ch, Plovdiv 2008
Unfortunately, even the best-motivated posi-

tional moves are not always tactically sound. Here Black did not notice that his back rank might be in danger, obviously counting on his rooks being able to defend the vital e8-square. Sadly for him, one of them may be annihilated immediately, which simultaneously deflects the second one...

24 \(\mathbb{\text{w}}\)xa8! 1-0
24...\(\mathbb{\text{Z}}\)xa8 25 \(\mathbb{\text{Z}}\)e8+ \(\mathbb{\text{Z}}\)xe8 26 \(\mathbb{\text{Z}}\)xe8#.

3) Sargisian – Skoberne

And not 35 \sigmaxh2??, which gives Black a chance to withdraw his queen with gain of tempo, and win after 35... \sigmah4+36 \sigmag1 \bigz xa4.

mpo, and win after 35... 營h4+ 36 營g1 基xa4. **35... 总d6**

4) Pruijssers - Kroeze
Dutch Club Ch 2008
25...資本f2+! 0-1

26 \(\bar{\text{Z}}\) \(

5) Zwanzger – Marković *Passau 1997*24...≌d8 0-1

25 鱼xd8 罩cl+ 26 豐dl 罩xdl+ 27 鱼fl 罩xfl#.

6) Stefanova – Peptan Moscow (Women's Olympiad) 1994

No – it is time for her to win by force! First Black needs to chase her opponent's king into position for a back-rank mate:

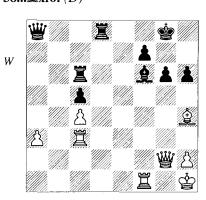
34... 對 b6+! 35 含 h1 And then deflect White's only defender: 35... 對 b1!! 36 對 e2 對 e4!

By now Black even had a choice: 36... 營d1! also wins.
0-1

A painful defeat!

7) Oleksienko – Golubev Odessa 2007

False. White has a weak back rank! 38...\$xf6! (D)



39 🕸 xf6

If 39 罩xf6 罩d1+ 40 罩f1 罩xf1+ 41 豐xf1 Black should give the discovered check by 41...罩f6+, forcing White to move his queen to a

bad square: 42 營g2 罩f1#.

39...\Zxf6 40 \Za1

After 40 \(\textbf{\Z}\)xf6? \(\textbf{\Z}\)d1+ White loses on the

\$xf1 f5 leads to an endgame that should be won for Black.
40... \$\mathbb{a}\$ a5 41 \$\mathbb{E}\$ f3 \$\mathbb{E}\$\$ xf3 42 \$\mathbb{E}\$\$ xf3 \$\mathbb{E}\$\$ a4 43 \$\mathbb{E}\$\$ e3

spot, while 40 豐xa8 罩xfl+ 41 含g2 罩xa8 42

響xc4 44 罩c1 ≝d5+ 45 含g1 ≝d4 0-1 8) Feller – Bacrot

French Ch, Pau 2008

32... **對xd6! 0-1**The critical square is for sure a1, but White can cover the check from there with his queen.

After 33 \(\) \(\) xd6 \(\) \(\) al + 34 \(\) \(\) el (not 34 \(\) fl \(\) \(\) c3+ 35 \(\) hl \(\) \(\) xf1#) 34...\(\) \(\) xe1+ 35 \(\) f2 Black has won a piece, but for the moment all his pieces are hanging. However, the b4-pawn will have the decisive word: 35...\(\) \(\) c1! 36 \(\) xc1 (36 \(\) xb4 leaves Black winning, with two minor pieces

Chapter 13

1) Bojkov – Delemarre

for a rook) 36.... &xc1 37 \(\bar{2}\) xf6 b3 −+.

World Under-18 Ch, Szeged 1994 Back in 1994, stalemate did not seem an im-

portant concept to me. I knew that it sometimes happens to some poor guys, who are just too blind to foresee their opponent's silly threats. This was something that would never happen to me, I thought. And then I had to bite the bitter pill. My position is obviously winning, and I was wondering why on earth my opponent did not resign.

58 **罩e7+??**

This awful move chases my opponent's king into a safety box. I saw the winning continuation 58 含xe3 基xh3+59 基f3 基h1 60 基f5+ 含d6 61 基a5. I later admitted to my trainer that the strategy of "this wins as well" does not always bear fruit...

58...曾f4 59 罩xe3 Now comes the shock.

59... \(\begin{aligned}
\begin{aligned}
59... \(\begin{aligned}
\begin{aligned}
\begin{aligned}
59... \(\begin{aligned}
\begin{aligned}
\begin

Black's king will be stalemated almost in the middle of the board.

2) Bojkov – Parker

World Under-18 Ch, Szeged 1994 Unfortunately this was not all. Two days later I had to face a strong player. I managed to

outplay him, and this position arose. While I was thinking, my trainer, the colourful IM Stoyan Ivanov (unfortunately he passed away some years ago) saw the position and remarked to his colleagues: "While there is still a pawn, there is no stalemate!" However...

76 **₩xa6??**

Again the same principle: depriving my opponent of any chances, or rather trying to... However, chess is a game where the rules are often confronted with the exceptions. In our

particular case the pawn on a6 is an irrelevance,

as it is not threatening to promote any time soon. Now Jonathan Parker saves himself using stalemate motifs.

76...營e**3+ 77 g5** 77 含h7 does not change anything, since after

77... 豐e7+ 78 當g6 (78 當h6?? 豐g7#) 78... 豐e6+ 79 豐xe6 it is stalemate again.

I remember that I was desperately gazing at

77...≌e6+

the position for some minutes, even wondering if I should play 78 \$\dispha\$h7 or 78 g6. And finally, I took the queen.

78 營xe6 ½-½

3) I. Goldin – Riabov *Moscow 1972*

1 ᡚd6+!!

1...窗XQC

In case of 3... 當 6 White does not capture the queen, but continues 4 豐 c8+! 當 b5 5 豐 c4+ 當 xc4.

4) Atakisi – V. Spasov

2 罩e7+! 豐xe7 3 豐c7+! 1/2-1/2

Turkish Team Competition 2008
In a severe time-scramble, White played 1

****Be8?** and got mated by **1...**Bh4# (0-1)**.

One can only guess what Umut Atakisi's

feelings were when Vasil Spasov demonstrated 1 **造h8+!** \$\text{\$c}\$xh8 2 **\text{\$e}**8+ \$\text{\$c}\$h7 3 **\text{\$g}**6+, when both 3...**\text{\$z}**xg6 4 **\text{\$e}**h8+ \$\text{\$c}\$xh8 and 3...\$\text{\$h}6 4 **\text{\$e}**h8+ \$\text{\$c}\$xg7+ \$\text{\$c}\$xg7 are stalemate. 1 **\text{\$g}6+!**, based on the same idea, is also suffi-

5) Fichtl – Hort

Czechoslovak Ch, Košice 1961 43...f5 44 \$\displays 65 f4 45 \$\displays 64 f3 46 \$\displays 63

This pawn advance does not seem to bring Black any relief. Why does he not simply give

up? 46...h5 47 **當f2 h4 48 ≜d6**

Zugzwang? **48...ġh3!**

1/2 - 1/2

cient to draw.

No! Black has built a safety box!

6)

3)

Pfeiter Jubilee, 1981 1 g7+ 當h7 2 g6+ 當h6 3 a8豐 罩xa8 4 當f7 Ïa7+5 営g8!! Ïxg7+

Y. Afek

5...曾xg6 6 曾h8. 6 \$h8 \(\bar{a} a 7 7 g7 \(\bar{a} x g 7 \) Stalemate

7) E. Pogosiants

Shakhmaty v SSSR, 1981 1 **신d6+ 할d3 2 신xc4 할e2!?** (2...f2 3 신e3

\$\preceq\$xe3 stalemate) 3 \$\overline{Q}\$e5 (not 3 \$\overline{Q}\$e3? \$\preceq\$xe3 4 솔gl 솔e2 5 솔hl 솔el 6 솔gl f2+ 7 솔hl fl쌜#) 3...f2 4 公f3 f1營+ (4...曾e3 5 公d2 曾e2 6 公f1 \$xf1 stalemate) 5 \(\hat{\text{\text{g1+}}}\degree{\text{gf2}}\) stalemate.

8) Spoelman – Hebden European Union Ch, Liverpool 2008

No, the talented Dutch player found a safety box and exploited it. 72 g7! 罩a8 73 含f5! a1營 74 罩xa1 兔xa1 75 曾g6! 曾e7 76 f5!

And not 76 h7?? 罩a6+ or 76 當h7? 當f7 77 f5 臭xg7 78 hxg7 罩d8 79 f6 罩g8 80 含h6 含xf6 76... **黨g8 77 當h7**

77 f6+ transposes and leads to a draw too: 77... **拿**xf6 78 **會**h7. 77...\$f7 78 f6 &e5 1/2-1/2

Chapter 14

1) Macieja – Simaček Czech Team Ch 2004/5 41...Del 42 Dd4

A clever try, but it does not bring White a whole point. 42 罩c8+ doesn't change anything: 42...曾g7 43 d8豐 包xf3+ 44 曾f1 包xh2+ is a

draw. 42...exd4 43 d8豐+ 曾g7 44 曾f1 ②xf3 45 罩c8 分xh2+ 1/2-1/2

2) Galkin - Liang Chong Internet 2004 Yes, it is! White needs to save his skin:

1 罩xh7! 含xh7 2 罩h1+ 含g8 3 罩h8+ 含f7 4 罩h7+ \$e8 5 罩h8+ \$d7

Now the king must be exposed: 6 豐xe7+! 含xe7 7 罩h7+ 含e8 8 罩h8+ With a draw.

French Team Ch, Lille 2005

Watching the decisive game of the match I realized that my team-mate Julien Saada could

Saada – Alanić

exchange everything at once and win the match

基xg4 88 當f6 h3 89 當f5 h2 90 兔xg4+ 當h4 91 **≜f3**, drawing. Unfortunately, he failed to see this option, chose 85 ©f5 instead, and it was only his luck

that saved the half-point in the end. 4) Prusikhin – Buhmann Griesheim 2003

26 罩xc5!! This bishop is protecting an important square.

Not 26... 響xc5? 27 響f6+ 罩g7 28 罩d8+. 27 罩d7!! 營xd7 28 營f6+ 營g7

diate perpetual check. White now needs to find

something more. 29 ②g6+! As we already know, deflection is also useful

as a defensive method. 29...hxg6 30 營h4+ 營h7 31 營f6+ 黨g7 32 **營d8+** 1/2-1/2

5) H. Lommer L'Italia Scacchistica, 1933 White constructs a drawing mechanism based

on the discovered check:

1 曾c8+! 曾c2 2 嶌b7! f1豐 3 嶌c7+ 曾d3 4 罩d7+ 含c4 4... �e4 5 罩e7+ and Black's king may not

step onto the f6-square due to the discovered attack with 罩el+. 5 罩c7+ 含b5 6 罩b7+ 含a6 7 罩b6+ 含a7 7...\$a5 8 罩b1+.

8 罩b7+ 含a8 9 罩b8+ With a draw.

6) Cao Sang - Acs Budapest 2000

...and needs to profit from his activity imme-31... gc3! 32 @h7+

diately. 32 ②d7+ 會e7 33 豐xc3 豐xc3 34 bxc3 罩xa3+35 曾b2 罩cxc3 =.

32...'ġe7 33 f6+ 33 曾g7+? 曾d8 34 曾f6+ 曾c7 -+.

4)

\$b2 \(\beta\)cxc3 \(\frac{1}{2}\)-\(\frac{1}{2}\)

Perpetual check by ... Zab3+ and ... Za3+,

Galliamova - Korchnoi 7)

etc., will follow.

Amsterdam (Ladies vs Veterans) 2001 34 罩xe6+! fxe6

Alisa Galliamova now rushed with 35 \mathbb{\mathbb{g}}7+? and lost after 35... 2f7 36 \(\text{\mathbb{W}}\xg5+\) (36 \(\text{\mathbb{Z}}\c7+\)

\$d6 −+) **36...\$**d**7**, etc. The correct line was given by Mark Taimanov: 35 罩c7+! 含d6 36 罩c6+!! 含xc6 (36...bxc6

빨c8+ 含d6 (37...含b6 38 빨d8+ 含c6 39 빨c8+

=) 38 營d8+ 含e5 39 營b8+! 含f6 (39...含d4?? 40 營xa7++-) 40 營f8+=.

Moral: Sometimes the road to heaven may be very narrow, and every wrong step can be the sin that leaves us outside.

8) G. Zakhodiakin Shakhmaty v SSSR, 1981

1 罩e1 ②cd2+ 2 含g4! Precisely here. All White's pieces are now in

full harmony. 2...分b1 3 臭g3! a1營 4 臭d6+ 含f7 5 罩e7+

曾g6 6 罩e6+ 曾f7 7 罩e7+ 曾f6 8 息e5+ 豐xe5 9 罩xe5 \$xe5

With a draw.

Chapter 15

1) Kravtsiv - Sieciechowicz Warsaw 2007

Alas, Black's light squares were blown open: 13 ≜xe6! fxe6 14 \(\exists g6+ 1-0\)

A forced mate is coming.

2) Khenkin – T. Søndergaard Esbjerg 2005

Black was definitely sorry that his rook had

left the f-file: 13 \(\partial xf7+! 1-0

13...含xf7 14 營d5+ 罩e6 15 公g5+.

3) P. Cramling – Kovalevskaya European Women's Ch, Plovdiv 2008

The pawn has a lot of energy left in it, and provides vital back-up to the assault on f7.

25 罩xf7! 罩xf7 26 罩e7 臭d7

29 罩xa7) 29 h5.

27 罩xf7 含h8 28 f3 g6 29 g4 h5 30 g5 急f5 31 \(\begin{aligned} 36 \\ \phig7 \) 32 \(\begin{aligned} 37 \\ \phi \) 18 33 \(\begin{aligned} 36 \\ \phig7 \) 34 \(\phif2 \) 18 33 \(\begin{aligned} 36 \\ \phig7 \) 34 \(\phif2 \) 18 33 \(\begin{aligned} 36 \\ \phig7 \) 34 \(\phif2 \) 18 33 \(\begin{aligned} 36 \\ \phig7 \) 34 \(\phif2 \) 18 33 \(\begin{aligned} 36 \\ \phig7 \) 34 \(\phif2 \) 18 33 \(\begin{aligned} 36 \\ \phig7 \) 34 \(\phif2 \) 18 33 \(\begin{aligned} 36 \\ \phig7 \) 34 \(\phif2 \) 18 33 \(\begin{aligned} 36 \\ \phig7 \) 34 \(\phif2 \) 18 33 \(\begin{aligned} 36 \\ \phig7 \) 34 \(\phif2 \) 18 33 \(\begin{aligned} 36 \\ \phig7 \) 34 \(\phif2 \) 18 33 \(\begin{aligned} 36 \\ \phig7 \) 34 \(\phif2 \) 18 33 \(\begin{aligned} 36 \\ \phig7 \) 34 \(\phif2 \) 18 33 \(\phif2

罩f8 35 罩xf8 含xf8 36 含e3 含e8 37 含d4 含d7

38 曾e5 b5 39 曾d5 a5 40 曾c5 息d3 41 息d5 **åb1 42 åc6+ åe6 43 åe4 1-0**

Valdes - J. Diaz Cuba 2001

And it is possible because Black did not occupy the blockading square d5. White now showed his trumps:

1 ②xf7! 曾xf7 2 豐xe6+ 曾f8 2... 會g6 3 罩e5 and 魚e4+ is coming. 3 臭h5! 1-0

3...g6 4 **Qh6#**; 3...**②xh5** 4 **Qxe7**+ **Zxe7** 5 豐xe7+ 含g8 6 豐e6+ +-.

5) Cabrilo – Popović Yugoslavia (rapid) 2004 ...and it is the one in front of the king:

1 &xf7+! \$xf7 2 \$b3+ \$f8 3 句f3! With the idea 🖾 g5. 3....皇f6 In the event of 3...h6 White still plays 4

②g5!! hxg5 and then opens the f-file by 5 f4! g4 6 f5 g5 7 f6 +-. 4 e5 營b6 5 罩ad1! 兔b7 6 罩xd4 兔xf3 7 罩f4 1-0

6) Shirov - Korchnoi (variation) Drammen 2004 28 罩xf7+! 罩xf7 29 豐xg6+ 含h8 30 豐xf7

Mate follows.

7) Asrian – Karasev

Russia Cup, St Petersburg 1997 21 罩xf7!! 含xf7

②d6 營c7 26 營xa8 +-.

22 營xd5+ 含g6 23 營c6+ 含h5 24 含e2+

할g5 25 ②e4+ 할f4 26 볼f1+ 할xe5 27 볼xf8 1-0 8) Sanduleac - Varadi

Szombathely 2003 13 &xf7+!! 當xf7 14 ②g5+ 當g6

The only move. Worse is 14... 會g8? 15 費b3+ d5 16 2 xd5 +-.

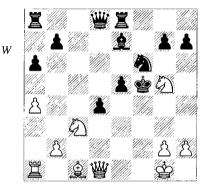
15 f4!

White's attack proves to be decisive. I hope that you foresaw most of the beautiful supporting lines.

15....9e5

Or 15... 公c5 16 f5+ &xf5 17 exf5+ 含xf5 18 De6!, and now:

- a) 18... 響d7 19 響f3+ 會g6 20 響g3+. b) 18...dxc3 19 豐f3+ 曾g6 20 豐g3+ +-.
- 營h3#) 20 營xe4+ 含f6 21 營xe6#.
- dxe5(D)
- 18... \$\delta xe5 19 \delta e2+ (or 19 \delta f7+ +-) 19... \$\delta f5 20 曾d3+ 含e5 21 g3! 公d7 22 夏f4+ 含f6 23
- ②d5#.



19 營d3+! e4

19...會g4 20 營h3#. 20 分cxe4! 息b4

Or: 20...會e5 21 息f4+! 會xf4 22 公f7!! 會f5

23 ②ed6++ 含e6 24 營f5#; 20... 營c7 21 ②d6++ 會e5 22 拿f4+! 曾d5 (22...曾xf4 23 豐g3#) 23

 当b3+ 含c6 24
 2c1+ 含d7 25
 当e6+ 含d8 26

 ②gf7#.

21 夕d6++ 含e5 22 息f4+! 1-0

Black resigned in view of 22... 含d5 23 習c4# or 22...含xf4 23 營g3#.

Chapter 16

1) Short – Ye Jiangchuan

Taiyuan 2004 We can strike immediately:

27 曾xh7+!! 1-0

White creates a discovered attack mechanism which forces mate: 27... 含xh7 28 罩h3+ 會g7 29 臭h6+ 會h7 30 臭f8+.

2) S.B. Hansen - H. Olafsson Reykjavik Zonal 1995

We can include the sleeping rook from h1: 19 &xh7+! 公xh7 20 營h5 1-0

20... This loses to the double exchange on

Bellon - Ask

Rilton Cup, Stockholm 2007/8 21...罩a2+!

3)

One rook is sacrificed, to allow the other one to deliver the decisive blow.

22 含xa2 營xc2+ 23 含a1 罩a8+ 24 營a4 0-1

4) Timofeev - Svidler

Russian Ch. Moscow 2008 An exchange of pieces and a rook sacrifice will have a similar effect:

18 &xf6! gxf6 19 \(\bar{2}\) xh7+! 1-0

Black resigned because of 19... \$\delta\$xh7 20 豐h3+ 會g7 21 豐g4+ (remember this stairway: White clears the road for his rook) 21... \$\display 822

5) Kravtsiv – I. Popov

Lvov 2006

14 基xh7+! 曾xh7 15 包g5+ 曾h8 16 豐e1 In an unusual way, the queen is sneaking to the h-file and h7-square.

16...cxb2+ 17 含b1 ②f6 18 營h4+ ②h5 19 gxh5 &h6 20 &d4+ 1-0

Van Haastert - Broekmeulen 6)

Dutch Club Ch 2008 15 \ Xh7! \ xh7 16 \ Yf6!

The first one, which blocks the f-pawn.

16... **罩h8 17 罩e1!**

This is the most important move in the assault. Black is not allowed to escape by ... 當g8.

17... 2d7 is impossible due to 18 \mathbb{\ma while 17... 響d7 is met by 18 響xg5 f5 19 Qd3

18 豐xg5 臭f5 19 臭d3 臭g6 20 豐f6 1-0

7) Amura – Ruan Lufei

Women's World Ch, Nalchik 2008

21 g3 \(\exists xg3\) will clear both the g- and h-files, and the rook will be transferred via e3 to give mate.

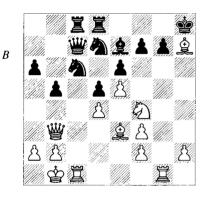
Black breaks in and starts collecting material.

23 罩f1 營h2+ 24 含f2 臭g3+ 25 含e2 營xg2+

26 gd1 gxb2 27 gc2 ga3 28 e4 ge5 29 exd5 罩d7 30 罩d2 罩ee7 31 罩f3 彎a5 32 d6 罩xd6 33 \$c2 \quad \quad e2 + 37 \quad \quad e3 \quad \quad e3 \quad e3 \quad \quad e3 \qua

8) Elianov – Van Welv Russian Team Ch, Dagomys 2008

19 \(\hat{\pm} \) xh7! \((D) \)



It must have been very painful for a top GM to suffer this heavy blow at such an early stage of the game.

19...**5**f8

19... \$\delta\xh7 20 \delta\xe6 (20 \delta\delta + is also winning) 20...fxe6 21 營d3+ 當h8 22 罩xg7 當xg7 23 罩g1+ 含h8 24 豐g6 +-.

20 &d3

White has won an important pawn and converted it easily into victory:

20... wb6 21 罩g4 公a5 22 wd1 g6 23 wf1 會g7 24 營h3 基xc1+ 25 兔xc1 基c8 26 兔e3 ②c4 27 ②xg6 1-0

Chapter 17

1) Anand - Aronian Morelia/Linares 2008

30... **三e3!** 31 fxe3 **当**xf3 32 **当c2** fxg3 33 hxg3 營xg3+ 34 含h1 全f5 0-1

2) Mitkov - Mikhailuk Las Vegas 2007

And his king is too vulnerable. 17 **皇h6+! 當h8**

17... 會xh6 18 曾h4+ and 曾xh7#.

18 營h4 罩g8 19 食f8 h5 20 營g5 1-0

3) Utiuganov – Konovalov USSR 1950

Black uses a well-known pattern that involves a double check:

Yes, a weakened fianchetto can be exploited with a (4+6) combination.

4) Pogorelov - Diaz Castro Dos Hermanas 2004

The bishop, for sure. In this example White gives mate in an unconventional way.

25 基xg7+!! 含xg7 26 身f6+!! 1-0

Black did not wish to see 26...\$xf6 (26...\$h7 27 幽g5 leads to a more standard finish) 27 豐h6+ 會e7 28 豐d6#.

5) Aveskulov – Averianov Kharkov 2005

To make use of it, he must get his queen nearer the g7-square, or the h-file. 34 基xe3! dxe3 35 基f5! 會h6

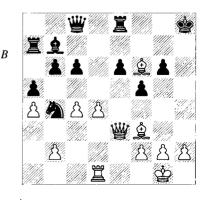
Or: 35...gxf5 36 營xh5+ 當g8 37 營h8#; 35...會g8 36 罩xh5 +--.

36 豐xe3+ 會h7 37 罩xh5+! gxh5 38 豐g5 **營xg2+39 營xg2 1-0**

6) Roiz - Kritz Biel 2007

In order to destroy the fianchettoed bishop and get control over all the dark squares, White sacrifices a whole rook:

1 ②xg6!! hxg6 2 \(\bar{\pi}\)xh8+ \(\bar{\pi}\)xh8 3 \(\bar{\pi}\)f6+ \((D) \)



3...**\$**h7

3...會g8 4 營h6 +-.

4 **營g**5

4 Qd5 exd5 5 營h3+ 含g8 6 營h8+ 含f7 7 豐g7+ 含e6 8 罩e1+ 含d6 9 臭e5+ 罩xe5 10

豐xe5+ 含d7 11 豐e7#. 4...e5 5 &h5!

5 營h4+ is also winning after 5... 含g8 6 營h8+ 會f7 7 竇g7+ 會e6 8 dxe5 幻d5 9 竇xg6.

會f8 9 響g7+ 會e8 10 響e7#) 8 響f7#.

夏xg6+ 罩xg6 7 彎h5+ 罩h6 (7...宮g8 8 彎xg6+

The game could finish like this: 5... Lige 8 6

7) Kramnik - Anand

Amber Rapid, Nice 2008

It is easy to discover the best move, even if it costs you a whole queen, if we remember

which our main enemy is: 42... 學f3!!

The queen has to be taken, since it X-rays the h1-square and threatens mate by ... Land +...

White gave one last check before resigning: 43 cxb7+ **\$**f5 0-1

8) Frois - L. Dominguez Lisbon 2000 No, Black can break open the fianchetto for-

mation by a rook sacrifice: 13...**≜**xg3!! 14 hxg3 **\(\beta\)**xe3! 15 fxe3

Now Black wins by force, but if White declines the sacrifice, then Black has simply won a valuable pawn for nothing.

Black comes out on top in the desperado dogfight after 15 基xc6 &xf3 16 基xf6 (16 &xf3? 罩xf3 17 exf3 bxc6 leaves Black a piece up)

16... ②xf6 17 臭xf3 罩e6, when White does not have enough for the exchange.

15...**營xg**3 Suddenly the black queen is frighteningly

close to the white king. 16 罩f1

In all lines Black makes full use of his queen, bishop and knights:

a) 16 豐xb7 臯h3! (Black does not mind giving up a whole rook with a check!) 17 5/h4 ②g4 18 豐xa8+ 會h7 -+. b) 16 🖞 b4 **Q**h3 17 **Q**h4 g5! wrecks White's

defensive fortifications. c) 16 含h1 皂h3! 17 皂xh3 豐xh3+ 18 含g1 豐g3+ 19 含h1 公g4 20 罩f1 公de5 21 罩c2

豐h3+ 22 曾g1 ②xe3 23 罩f2 ②5g4 -+. 16...臭h3 17 ②h4

17 罩f2 ②g4 18 罩cf1 ②de5 19 \$h1 ②xf2+ 20 罩xf2 包g4 -+. 17...ളിള4 0-1

Chapter 18

1) Z. Almasi - Navara

Reggio Emilia 2007/8

White decided to liquidate into a rook endgame with two pawns more: 32 臭xf7+! 嶌xf7

32...\$h8 33 \$g6. 33 罩xd6 豐a7 34 豐xf7+ 豐xf7 35 罩xf7

☆xf7 36 罩xb6 and White won later. Thus energy had trans-

formed into material.

2) M. Fuentes – J. Hernandez Havana 2002

Then awaken him. The price is insignificant: only a pawn!

1 d5! exd5

罩xh5+! gxh5 5 罩xh5+ +-) 3 g3 and Black collapses.

2 臭d4 Now that White has established this bishop

The following beautiful lines are only a proof of something that we already know. 2...**\$**g8

on a dominant diagonal, nothing can save Black.

Or:

a) 2...會f8 3 嶌xg6! 豐xg6 4 豐e7+ 會g8 5 罩e6 瞥f7 6 뷀g5+ �f8 7 夏c5+ +-. b) 2...含h6 3 罩e6!! 營xe6 4 罩xh5+! gxh5 5

營g5+ 含h7 6 營g7#. This line is my favourite, and wholly logical! 3 罩e7! 營xe7 4 罩xg6+ 含f8 5 臭c5!! 營xc5 6

3) Danilov - A. Vajda

營f6+ 含e8 7 嶌g7! 1-0

Romania 2004 We know that the light squares are vulnera-

ble, and we need to find a way to open lines: 1 嶌h5! 含g8

1...gxh5 2 豐xh5 曾g8 3 豐xf7+ 曾h7 4 豐h5#.

2 臭xf7+! 1-0 Black resigned in view of 2... \$\preceq\$xf7 (or the other way round: 2... \$f8 3 罩h8+ \$xf7 4 營e6#) 3 營e6+ 含f8 4 罩h8#.

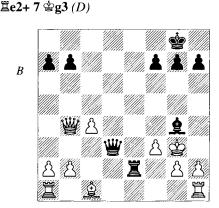
4) Yuzhakov – Frolianov Khanty-Mansiisk 2007

Black decided to prevent White permanently from castling:

1....**&b4! 2 豐xb4 罩xe2+!**

Black exchanges the main defender in his opponent's position, and keeps pounding on the light squares.

3 \$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\geq}\$}\$} d3+ 4 \$\text{\$\text{\$\geq}\$} 1 \$\text{\$\geq}\$ g4! 5 f3 \$\text{\$\text{\$\geq}\$}\$ 6 \$\text{\$\geq}\$ f2



If you have seen this far, I congratulate you. The end is near:

8 ⇔xg2 ₩xf3+ 9 ⇔g1 ♠h3 and White cannot protect both f1 and g2. 8...♠xf3 0-1

5) E. Pogosiants

Shakhmaty v SSSR, 1981

Black will try to exchange the last remaining pawn, but in the process will have to place his pieces too awkwardly:

1 0.5 0.4 (1...0.4 2 0.6 7 0.5 3 0.5 2 0.4 4 0.6 4 0.5 5 0.6 5 0.6 5 0.6 2 0.6 2 0.6 6 0.6 2 0.6 6 0

6) Ionica – Jianu Bucharest 2001

≜xb5 4 ⊘d5 and White wins.

30 罩xf7! 営xf7 31 总e6+ 営g6

Black's king needs to step in front of his army since 31... 全8 32 世xg7 豐e7 33 全f7+ 全d7 34 豐g4+ 全d8 35 豐g8+ 全d7 36 全e6+ nets material for White.

32 豐f4! 豐e7

32... **当**f6 33 h5+ **含**xh5 34 **2**f7+ is a quick mate.
33 **2**f7+ 1-0

It is mate in two: 33... 響xf7 34 響g5#.

33 h5+ would have mated in four: 33... 含xh5 34 臭g4+ 含g6 35 營f5+ 含h6 36 營h5#.

7) Moiseenko – Yuldachev Turin Olympiad 2006

24...**©e2**+!

This temporary piece sacrifice leads to an opposite-coloured bishops position where Black is the more active side.

25 ②xe2 罩xe2 26 hxg4 營d4 27 營f1 罩xd2

Black recovers the piece, and his attack proved to be decisive.

28 全f4 罩xd3 29 罩e1 全c6 30 学h2 g5 31 全e3 營xg4 32 a4 bxa4 33 罩b1 罩b3 34 罩e1 a3

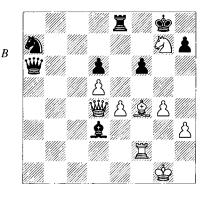
호e3 빨xg4 32 a4 bxa4 33 트b1 트b3 34 트e1 a3 35 트a1 a2 36 빨h3 빨f3 37 호d4 g4 38 빨f1 트b1 0-1

8) Marin – De Vreugt Tel Aviv 2000

It's all about the initiative!

34 ②xg7! (D)

After the primitive 34 🖾 xd6? 🖺 b8, Black gains counterplay.



34...**ℤ**xe4

34... \$\press{2}\$ is met by two deadly blows: 35 \$\press{2}\$ h6+! \$\press{2}\$ g8 36 \$\press{2}\$ xf6 +-.

35 豐xf6 罩e1+ 36 含h2 兔e4

The question is who is quicker. It should be the one who starts first, of course.

36... **2**f1 37 **2**e6+ **2**h8 38 **2**e8+ **2**xg7 39 **2**h6+! +-.

If 36...豐a1 White wins in various ways: 37 豐xa1 罩xa1 38 食xd6 +- or 37 豐d8+ 含xg7 38 食h6+! 含xh6 39 豐f8+ (or 39 豐xd6+ 含g7 40 豐f8+曾g641豐f7+曾h642g5+!+-)39...曾g5 40 h4+! +-. 37 **營e6+**

37 營d8+ also wins.

37... \$\dots \delta 8 \delta e8+ \delta xg7 \delta 2 \delta h6+! \delta xh6

40 營f8+ 1-0

Chapter 19

1)

Fridman - Wells

European Union Ch, Liverpool 2008

No. The d4-rook should switch to another

file where it poses much more danger for Black: 24 **皇xg7! 1-0**

24...曾xg7 25 罩g4+.

Haba - Kachar 2) Pardubice 2004

1 当xg7+! 1-0 1... \$\delta xg7 2 \quad \quad gd+ \delta h8 3 \quad f6 with the idea

罩xh6#. Both rooks found juicy lines to work

3) C. Reyes – E. Estevez Cuba 2005

White will use the open file to deliver mate

or win material.

1 罩he7!

This move, restoring the coordination of all White's troops, proves decisive.

1...5 xe7

1... \(\bar{\pi}\) xh8 2 \(\bar{\pi}\) 1e6#.

2 **營xf6+ 全c7** 2...曾d5 3 罩e5#; 2...曾d7 3 罩xe7+ 曾c8 4

響f8+ and mate next move.

3 罩xe7+ �b6

3...會b8 4 營e5+ 會c8 5 營h8+. 4 罩e6 罩c8

4... 對xe6 5 對xe6+ and Black also loses the

g4-rook. 5 d5!

Forcing the inevitable.

1-0

Gavrilov - Soloviov 4) St Petersburg 2005

Black opens both g- and h-files and delivers mate with a cunning manoeuvre by his queen: 31...②xh3+!! 32 gxh3 \(\bar{2}\)g7+!

32... 基xh3 33 曾g2 基xe3 -+. 33 含h2 罩xh3+! 34 含xh3 營c8+! 0-1

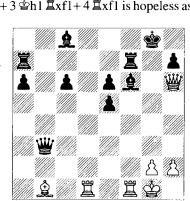
Quesada - C. Diaz 5)

Cuba 2000

White uses clearance to bring both the rooks and the bishops into the attack:

1 ②xf6+! &xf6 (D)

1... 基xf6 leads to a forced mate: 2 &xh7+ 會h8 (2...會f7 3 豐g6+ 會f8 4 豐g8#) 3 臭g6+ 會g8 4 營h7+ 會f8 5 營h8#; 1...會h8 2 包xh7 ②c5+3 當h1 罩xf1+4 罩xf1 is hopeless as well.



2 &xh7+! 1-0 Black resigned in view of a line where the f1-rook is the star: 2... \(\begin{aligned} & \text{\$\frac{1}{2}\$} 罩d8+! 魚xd8 (3...含f7 4 xh7#) 4 罩f8#.

6) Dzagnidze - Stefanova

FIDE Knockout (Women), Elista 2004

Both black rooks are working on semi-open files, but it will be even better if they have an open file:

23...�e4! 24 ≜xe4

The only move. If 24 幽g2 or 24 幽c2, then 24... **Zxd3!** nets a pawn for Black.

24... 曾xe4+ 25 dxe4 罩xd2

Black has a large advantage thanks to the con-

trol of the only open file. She won convincingly: 26 国g2 国ed8 27 国ge2 曾f8 28 曾g2 国xe2+

g6 33 Zd2 Zh1 34 b4 Zh3+ 35 \$f4 Zxh4+ 36

會e5 f6+ 37 曾d4 f5 38 b5 cxb5 39 cxb5 罩xe4+ 40 當c5 罩xe3 41 當b6 罩e5 42 罩d3 f4 43 罩b3 g5 44 \$\delta xb7 f3 45 b6 g4 46 \$\delta c6 \quad \quad e6+ 47 \$\delta d5 罩xb6 48 罩xb6 f2 49 罩b7+ 當f6 50 罩b8 當g7 51 罩b7+ 含g6 52 罩b6+ 含g5 53 罩b1 g3 54 含e4

g2 55 罩b5+ 曾g4 56 罩b7 f1營 57 罩g7+ 曾h5 58

7) Bologan – Akopian

FIDE Grand Prix. Moscow 2002

49...罩e3!!

After this nice tactical idea, based on both

clearance and interference. White has no de-

fence. Note that 49... \(\bar{\pm} b3 \) is less effective in

view of 50 營c5, covering f2. 50 当b7+ 含h8 51 罩f1 当xe5 52 当b6 当g5

8) A. Graf - Gustafsson

German Ch, Altenkirchen 2005

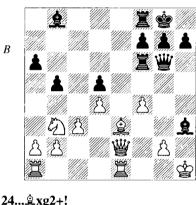
... and finds a way to use it: 23... 2xh3! 24 f4 (D)

24 gxh3 營e4+ 25 f3 (or 25 曾gl 罩g6+)

27 曾gl 罩g3 -+.

В

53 h4 營xh4 0-1



Nevertheless.

25 **曾xg2** 25 **含**h2 **息**e4 -+.

25... 營h5+ 26 營h2 營f3+ 27 營g2 罩h6+ 28 當g1 罩g6 0-1

Chapter 20

1) Shirov - Wang Hao Russian Team Ch. Sochi 2009 23 罩xh6!! 1-0

23...豐xh6 24 幻f6+ 含h8 (or 24...豐xf6 25

≜xf6 gxf6 26 營xf6) 25 皇g5! traps the queen.

2) Dziuba - Dydyshko Polanica Zdroj 2000

Black first shuts the queen out of the game, and wins material:

2 罩xd2 罩xc1 3 匂xc1 竇xd2 costs White an exchange. 2... **基xc1 3 公xc1**

White's position crumbles after 3 \(\bar{2}\) xc1 b3 4 빨al 호g5 5 勺fl 빨e4+ 6 含g1 빨xe2 -+. 3... we4+ 4 曾g1 皇g5 5 勾f1 wc2 0-1

White's rook is trapped.

3) Godena - Trent European Union Ch, Liverpool 2008

It is the white queen that is the target: 26...\$f7

The threat of a discovered attack forces deci-

sive material gains. 27 &c1 🗹 d2 28 🖾 1xd2 &xb3 29 axb3 豐c2 30 b4 e4 0-1

4) Narančić – Leventić

Bosnian Team Ch. Neum 2008

The only piece that is in danger is the a6rook, and White's own knight has just cut off its retreat.

21...@cb4 22 cxb4 @xb4 23 g4 &xd3 24 ②xe5 &xe5 25 &xd3 營xg4+ 26 含h1 營f3+ 27 **\$g1 ②xa6** 0-1

5) V. Milov – V. Meijers Zwolle 2003

Black's queen has access to e4, and this square should be blocked. 38 e4!! dxe4

38... ②d6 39 e5 ②e4+ gives White a chance

to create a strong passed pawn: 40 \(\mathbb{Z}\) xe4 dxe4

41 exf6 exd3 42 f7 +-.

In case of the more resilient 38... Exe4 39 b8+ 含g7 40 罩g1 h2 (40... ≝f3 41 息d1) 41

罩hl 響g2 42 罩cgl 響f3 43 臭dl White also traps the queen. 39 &xf7!

An important gain of time, giving Black no

respite to free his queen.

39...罩xf7 40 ②e5 罩g7

Or: 40... Ife7 41 含e3 Ixe5 42 dxe5 習f3+ 43 營xf3 gxf3 44 含f4 +-; 40... 基xe5 41 dxe5 国d7+ 42 會e2 營f3+ 43 營xf3 exf3+ 44 會e3

41 **\$e3!**

Now 單g1 is inevitable. Not at once 41 罩g1? due to 41...e3+.

41...罩xe5 42 dxe5 習f3+ 43 習xf3 and White soon won.

1...公d2!! 2 營a2

6)

8)

European Team Ch, Plovdiv 2003 White sets up his opponent's pieces for some punishing blows:

Grishchuk – Sutovsky

21 f6! &xf6 22 e5 &g5 22... 2g7 23 習e4 is a double attack against

both the queen and the b7-pawn. If Black drops that pawn he will also lose his a6-knight.

23 夏f2 營f4 24 罩e4 營f5 25 營e2 1-0 There follows g4.

7) D. Petrov

Sovietsky Shakhmatny Etiudy, 1955 White gives up both his minor pieces, but traps the black rook in return:

1 罩e2! Not 1 包c4? 曾d3 2 罩f4 罩g4+ 3 罩xg4 hxg4

1... 基h1+ 2 當g3 當xb2 3 &e1+! 當c1 4 當g2

営d1 5 罩d2+! 営xe1 6 罩d4! White wins.

B. Maksimović – Boikov

Varna 2002 A series of exchanges granted Black time to trap the white knight on the edge of the board:

35... axc4 36 axc4 axb5 38 ûxb5 ûd4 With two mighty bishops, and White's pieces very short of moves, Black's task is very pleas-

ant. Later White even sacrificed the poor knight but this did not save him.

39 g4 \$f8 40 \$g3 \$e7 41 h4 \$d6 42 h5 gxh5 43 g5 hxg5 44 fxg5 \$\dispersepectric e5 45 \$\overline{Q}\$xb6 \$\dispersepectric xb6 46 &c4 &d5 47 &xd5 &xd5 48 &h4 &e6 49 \$\psixh5 \psif5 50 \psih6 \textrm{\pma}d4 51 a4 \textrm{\pma}c3 52 a5 &xa5 53 曾g7 曾e6 54 曾h7 &c3 55 曾h6 &d2 0 - 1

Chapter 21

1) Todorović - Kraai

Budapest 2003 White will obviously clear the g-file for his rook. In doing so he must foresee what to do against Black's only defensive resource - bringing his own rook to the g-file.

26 9 e4! The best place for the knight. It will now cooperate perfectly with the queen.

1-0

26... 置g8 27 營h7+!! The easiest way: White decoys the king into

a mate in two

However, the simple 27 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xg8+ should also 할g6 (29...할h8 30 ②xf6 is similar) 30 빨xf6+

할h7 (30...할h5 31 包g3#) 31 豐f7+ 할h8 32 4) f6 and mate is inevitable. This is no surprise, since neither of the black pieces can help their king.

27...會xh7 28 ②xf6+ 會h8 29 罩xg8#.

2) An. Rodriguez - Soto Callao 2007

All the white pieces are fully active, and it is no wonder that he finds a decisive way to break 24 罩g6! 1-0

It is forced mate after 24...fxg6 25 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xh6+ gxh6 26 \widetaxh6#.

25 曾xh7+! 1-0

3) Gyimesi – Bistrić

Bosnian Team Ch, Neum 2008 The situation is similar to the previous one.

Black king lacks defenders, while White's attacking forces are much superior. There must be a forced win!

forced mate. 4)

J. Polgar – Karpov

Hoogeveen 2003

25 \(\hat{L}\xh7+!\) Lasker's idea in action. By sacrificing both bishops, White opens up her opponent's king, enabling her major pieces to give mate.

25... \$\psixh7 26 \quad h3+ \$\psig8 27 \quad hg6 leads to

25...含xh7 26 習h5+ 1-0 has various wins, but the best one is to keep on opening lines for her rooks: 28 2xf6 2xf6 29 罩g3+ 含f8 30 沓h8+ 含f7 31 罩g7#) 28 罩g3+

當f6 29 幽g5#. This must have been a great

shock for the ex-world champion!

5) Malakhatko – Ovechkin Voronezh 2008

20 ②f6+!

White opens a route for his queen. 20... **黨xf6**

9)

this fact.

營xf8#. This motif will be repeated in all lines. 21 **基xf6** gxf6

21...gxh6 22 營g3+ 含h7 23 罩f7+ 含h8 24

22 曾g3+ 夕g6 22...會f7 23 竇g7+ 會e8 24 竇f8#.

23 營xg6+ 含h8

As a result of the combination, White has regained the sacrificed material, and is left with by far the best pieces on the board. He has various ways now to conclude the job; domination

24 d6 \$\dagger\$b7 25 \textsqf8 1-0

is the most effective.

幽g7#.

6) Dimitrijević – K. Stokke

Rilton Cup, Stockholm 2007/8 White has an overwhelming concentration of forces on the h-file. He now needs first to

open it, and then to make good use of it. 會f7 26 罩1h7+ 會e8 27 ②xf6+ 1-0

White's pieces cooperate in perfect harmony.

7) Dzagnidze - Sulskis Gibraltar 2008 Black has established control of the open b-

file, and penetrated to his seventh rank. Various tactical ideas arise now, but first he needs to bring up some material support for his attack: 29...②xf3!

With this simple idea, Black introduces two

powerful pieces with gain of tempo: 30 掌xf3 豐g4+ 31 當g2 ②xh5

...句f4+ or ... 響xg3+ is inevitable now.

32 公d1 營xg3+ 33 含h1 營h3+ 34 含g1 公g3 0 - 1

8) Garbisu – Kosić Budapest 2008

26 ②xe6!

皇f5#.

White has concentrated too many troops against the f5-square to contemplate a cowardly retreat by his knight. By sacrificing a small amount of material, he unleashes the power of the remaining pieces. He will also achieve a pleasant opposite-bishops position.

豐h7+ 含f8 30 豐h8+ 1-0 30...含e7 31 營xg7+ 食xg7 32 罩f7+ 含e6 33

Dutch Team Ch 2007/8

All the light squares on the black kingside are weak, and there ought to be a way to exploit

21 營c2! 魚xd4 22 魚h7+ 含h8 23 夕g6+ **含xh7 24 ②xf8++ 含g8 25 營h7+ 含xf8 26** 豐h8+ 豐g8 27 罩e8+ 含xe8 28 豐xg8+ 含e7 29

Siebrecht – Van Haastert

翼e1+ 含d6 30 響f8+ 1-0 Black loses additional material.

10) P. Nikolić - Swinkels

Dutch Team Ch 2007/8 White has prepared a rook-lift on his fourth

rank. Now he exploits the weaknesses in Black's kingside pawn-structure:

30 ②e6+! fxe6 31 \(\bar{2}\)f4+ 1-0 After 31... 當e8 32 罩xg4 Black loses a queen or a rook.

11) Vitiugov – Diachkov Russian Team Ch, Dagomys 2008 A king in the centre is always a juicy target.

We should be willing to part with some material in order to open files for our rooks against it, and exploit the pins created: 21 臭h5! 豐xh5 22 罩xe6 豐f7 23 勺f5

23 罩cel is also possible, but less precise due to 23... 它e5 24 罩xf6.

營b6+1-0

12) De Vreugt - Mchedlishvili Hilversum 2008

Black has an enormous strategic advantage due to his glorious bishops, and he finds the easiest way to convert it - tactics:

13) Ristić - Kojović

Yugoslav Team Ch, Vrnjačka Banja 1999 White will be happy to include his rook in the assault. However, the immediate 20 營f6+ gives Black the additional option 20...\$\ddot\ddot\ddot\ddot

20 公d5+! exd5 21 營f6+ 含f8 22 罩h3 1-0

The powerful tandem of queen and rook is sufficient to mate: 22...包g6 23 罩h7 d6 (23...罩e7 24 星h8+ 包xh8 25 豐xh8#) 24 豐g7+ 含e7 25 xf7+ 含d8 26 xc7#.

14) Colombian Ch 2005 White decided to prepare a discovered at-

tack, and wasted precious time by playing 29 響e1?, and the game was drawn after 29...c3 30 罩xg6 豐xb4? (30...hxg6 31 &xe7 cxb2 is a lot

Tovio – Echavarria

豐xe5+? (33 罩f7! 豐d4+ 34 宮h1! 罩g8 35 勾g6+ 罩xg6 36 營h4 is winning for White) 33...當g8

34 劉d5+ 含h8 35 劉e5+ 含g8 36 劉g5+ 含h8 37 ②g6+ hxg6 38 營h6+ 含g8 39 營xg6+ 1/2-1/2.

However, his major pieces were already well-placed for a decisive assault, and he could have sacrificed his bishop immediately to de-

flect Black's queen away from the kingside: 29 ②xg6!! hxg6 30 罩xg6 豐xb4

A counter-deflection by 30...c3 does not work since after 31 營xa6 營xb4 32 罩xg7+ the white queen has access to the f6-square, and it is

forced mate; check it for yourself. 會g8 34 竇g5+ 會h8 35 罩f7 +-

15) Bologan - Heberla European Ch, Plovdiv 2008

files, and the black queen is poorly placed on a7. Both black knights are also wandering around on the queenside. This suggests that the position is ripe for an assault on the kingside.

White's rooks have occupied both central

20 夕f6+ gxf6 21 豐g3 fxg5 22 豐xg5+ 含h8 23 曾f6+ 會g8 24 罩d5 ②4e5 25 罩dxe5 ②xe5 26 罩xe5 罩fe8

26...h6 was somewhat more resilient, when Black will finally include his queen in the defence after 27 豐xh6 豐b6, but only to lose it on the next move: 28 罩g5+ 豐g6 29 罩xg6+ fxg6

30 營xg6+. 27 罩g5+ 含f8 28 罩f5 The only 'imperfection' in White's play is

that 28 營h6+ mates in five, one move earlier than the text-move would do.

1-0

16) Kovalevskaya – T. Vasilevich

European Women's Ch, Plovdiv 2008 White uses the power of her passed pawn to establish control over the seventh rank.

35 罩b7 35 ₩a6 is another solution. We gave this example to demonstrate the power of the passed

pawn, and the fact that it can be used in various ways, in this case thanks to a pin: 35... 2xa7 36 罩b7.

35...臭f8 36 豐f7 臭e7 37 罩xe7 匂xe7 38

豐xe7 ��g8 39 豐c7 1-0

17) Motylev - Markos European Ch, Plovdiv 2008

White needs to break in via the open h-file. 41 臭g6! 罩ff7

41...hxg6 42 fxg6.

42 &xf7+ 豐xf7 43 豐h5 豐e7 44 罩g6! 1-0

18) Khuzman - Yanev

European Ch, Plovdiv 2008 Black's rooks are forked, and he needs to act

promptly if he is not to lose.

43...食xg2! 44 食xg2 罩c8 The rooks are getting untangled and their power is sufficient to keep the balance. 45 &xb7

After 45 \(\begin{aligned} \b pin. 45...罩b6!

Black's sacrifice on g2 blew open the white king's pawn-shield, so White now cannot af-

ford to capture the rook.

46 🖳 g2 Not 46 &xc8?, when 46... 響f2+47 會h1 罩b2 will be mate.

46... ②e6 47 豐e4 罩xc7 Black has broken free of the fork, and is re-

warded with half a point for his creativity. 48 f5 豐xe4 49 夏xe4 罩b2+ 50 含h1 gxf5 1/2 - 1/2

19)

Jojua – Banikas

European Ch, Plovdiv 2008

White drags the black king towards the centre, and mates:

23 ②f5+! gxf5 24 豐g3+ 當f6 25 ②xd7+ 豐xd7 26 f4 1-0

20) Pantsulaia – Swiercz

European Ch, Plovdiv 2008 The first move is obvious: White will open

the h-file for his rooks. 28 🕸 xg6!! hxg6

28...h6 29 罩fh1 公xf4+ 30 臭xf4 豐xf4 31 2)e4 is good for White.

29 罩fh1 竇g7

But what now? 30 罩1h2!

The key move: White has enough time to triple his major pieces on the only open file. 30....**⊈**xe5

Black's only chance is to fish in muddy wa-

ters, but it will not work here. 31 fxe5 營xe5 32 營d3 營f6 33 罩h6 臭a6 34

罩xg6+ 罩g7 (D) W

35 罩h8+! 含xh8 36 營h3+ 含g8 37 營h7+! 會f8 38 營h8+ 會e7 39 罩xg7+ 會d6 40 營h2+ 1-0

21) Minina – Djingarova European Women's Ch, Plovdiv 2008

22...Qh3+! With this clever strike, Black wins material

due to the pin on the d-file.

23 \$\delta xh3 \$\alpha f2+ 24 \$\delta g2 \$\alpha xd1 25 \$\delta xd1\$ ⊈h4 0-1

22) E. Cosma - Calzetta

European Women's Ch, Plovdiv 2008

Black's queen is overloaded:

18 嶌b8+ 嶌xb8 19 澂xb8+ 澂d8 20 魚b5+

1-0

23) Zimina – Zakurdzhaeva European Women's Ch, Plovdiv 2008

Black's king is desperately weak, and the position is screaming out for the decisive blow:

19 ②xb6+! axb6 20 豐xb6 1-0

24) Nayer - Maletin

European Ch, Plovdiv 2008 20 2 xf7!

20 Zadl &xf3 21 公xf3 公e8 22 Yaa6 Yf6 23 c3 is also excellent for White, although opposite-coloured bishops in an endgame. The game continuation is based on the poor coordination of Black's pieces. 20... 🗓 xf7 21 🖄 g5 & h5 22 🖄 xf7 & xf7 23

Black may then have some hopes based on the

White plays for the attack, and already has a material advantage. Not 25 基xe8? 皇xh2+! 26

會xh2 豐xd3 27 罩xd3 罩xe8, which lets Black

slip away. 25...曾d7 26 曾d3 b5 27 axb5 axb5 28 罩e5 罩d8 29 罩d5 響e6 30 g3 c4 31 彎f3+ 勺f6 32 罩xb5 �g8 33 罩b6 e5 34 e3 匂e4 35 ¤bxd6! 1-0

25) Roiz - B. Savchenko

European Ch. Plovdiv 2008 15 罩xc6! 臭f8 Probably Black had overlooked that after

his position is falling apart. 16 罩xe6+! 息xe6 17 營e3 營d5

17... 響c8 18 食f6 罩h7 19 d5. 18 9 e5 1-0

26) D. Fridman - N. Mamedov European Ch, Plovdiv 2008

21 g4!

Some computer engines take quite while to discover this unexpected blow.

21...fxg4 22 &d5! The point: this opens lines on the kingside, and excludes Black's queen from the defence. 22...e6

White also mates after 22...罩f8 23 豐xg4 豐c8 24 豐h5 e6 25 罩g1 exd5 26 豐g5.

23 營xg4 舍h8 24 罩h3 罩g8 25 營h5 1-0 25...h6 26 罩gl and 豐xh6+ is inevitable.

27) Akopian - lotov

European Ch, Plovdiv 2008

The e4-bishop protects h7, but an idea based on both interference and pin will make it an ineffective defender.

30 g6! ≗xg6 Now the pin will come into play. The inter-

ference theme is seen in the line 30...fxg6 31 **營xh7#**.

31 罩g1 息g5 32 罩xg5 f6 1-0

Black resigned since many roads lead to Rome.

31)

28) Vachier-Lagrave - Vitiugov European Ch, Plovdiv 2008

After 38... 會g8 39 包e7+ 會f7 40 營c4+ 會e8

41 ②xg6+ White wins everything. 29) M. Gurevich - Jojua

European Ch, Plovdiv 2008 33 **⊈e**3!

Without the fianchettoed bishop, Black collapses. 33...**£**xe3

 当g6+ 含h8 37 当xh6+ 含g8 38 三g6+ 含f7 39

 国g7+ 含e8 40 省e6+ 省e7 41 省xe7#.

34 **曾g2 1-0** 34... **国g8** 35 **国xh6+ 含xh6** 36 **智h3+**.

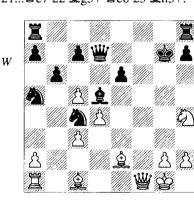
30) Cmilyte - E. Atalik European Women's Ch, Dresden 2007

Bromberger – Kremenietsky

Gausdal 2008 By dragging the king out, White will awaken

37 Qg1 2f2+ 38 Sh2 2xg4+.

his queenside forces: 20 罩xf6!! 含xf6 21 当f1+! 含g7 (D) 21...曾e7 22 臭g5+ 曾e8 23 臭h5+.



22 臭h6+! 曾g8 22... 會xh6 23 營f6#.

23 營f6 Qe4 24 罩f1! 1-0

32) Efimenko - Andreikin

Russian Team Ch, Dagomys 2008 No centralized king is ever safe! White will break in by using the queen's need for 'fresh air'. 17 &a5! 公xa5 18 &xd7+ 含xd7

豐xf7+ 鱼e7 21 ②c4!) 20 冨e4!, planning 21 罩f4. 19 曾xf7+ Qe7 20 公c5+ 曾xc5 20...會d8 21 夕xe6+ 會d7 22 罩c7+.

18...會e7 19 ②xa5 豐xa5 (or 19...會xd7 20

21 国xc5 国bf8 22 豐xg7 国fg8 23 国c7+! 含xc7 24 營xe7+ 含b8 25 營d6+ 含a8 26 營xd4 1-0

33) Lilleoren - Zhu Chen Gibraltar 2008

A bishop on c5 is a monster, and Black needs an open h-file to support its efforts. 22...42g4+! 23 hxg4

23 當hī 包f2+ 24 當h2 h4 25 e5 hxg3+ 26 當xg3 營b6 is no picnic either.

23...hxg4 24 息f3 罩h6+ 25 曾g2 罩h2+ 0-1

34) Naiditsch - Mas Dresden Olympiad 2008 It is not easy to understand what is happening at the moment, as there are so many pieces hanging.

25 ②xh6+! White creates an overloaded piece in his opponent's camp while using one of his attacked

pieces as a desperado. dxe6 \(\beta\)xd8 29 exf7+ \(\prec{\pi}\)xf7 30 fxe5 \(\pm\) The end of the forced line leaves White a solid pawn ahead with a positional advantage.

32...罩f8 is more resilient. 33 罩c1 d5 34 罩c7+ 當g6 35 e7 1-0

30... ge7 31 罩f1+ 當g7 32 e6 gf6?

35) Leventić – Bistrić Bosnian Team Ch, Neum 2008

Both central files have been occupied by white rooks, and the black king is in the centre. He has no chance...

18 公d7 公xd7 19 豐xe4 公f8 20 食d7+ 含d8 21 \(\partia\)a5+ 1-0

36) Bluvshtein – Rowson Dresden Olympiad 2008

20...e3!

A pawn – even a centre pawn – for a whole diagonal is a small price! 21 &xe3 &b7 22 當f2

22 公c1 營h1+23 含f2 營xh2+.

22... 当f3+ 0-1

37) M. Muzychuk – I. Andrenko

Ukrainian Girls' Ch, Odessa 2008

White has a way to bring a piece into the attack with gain of tempo:

Malakhatko – Perez Felipe

38) La Laguna 2008

With such an exposed king, our task is a pure

pleasure:

20 罩d5+! 含g6 Or: 20...f5 21 營e7+ 營f6 22 f4+; 20...exd5

21 **岁**h6+ **含**f5 22 **3**h5+ **含**e4 23 f3+ **含**d4 24 營f6+ 含c5 25 營xc3.

21 皇d3+!

Interference. White excludes the black queen from the defence and so gives mate.

1-0 21...cxd3 22 營g3+ 含f6 23 營g5#.

K. Rohonyan - Motoc 39)

Dresden (Women's Olympiad) 2008

Black's king is not safe on e7, and it will be even worse if dragged into the middle of the board:

18 罩xd7+! 含xd7 19 公c5+ 含d6 20 營xe6+ **\$**xc5 20...含c7 is not advisable either: 21 響f7+

\$\ddot{\text{\$\phi}}66 22 \ddot{\text{\$\phi}}d7+ \ddot{\text{\$\text{\$\phi}}}c7 (22...\ddot{\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\phi}}}a5 23 b4+ \ddot{\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\phi}}}a4 24 豐b3#) 23 ②xf6+ 含c8 24 豐e6+ 含b8 25 ②d5

21 b4+ 含d4 22 臭g2 豐d2

After 22... we5 there are mating lines possible, but it is enough if you saw that Black's queen is doomed: 23 罩d1+ 含e3 24 罩e1+.

23 營付6+

effective too.

1-0

40) Pruess - Chua

USA Ch Qualifier, Chicago 2008 The rooks have already occupied the vital

seventh rank. It is time for White to make use of

Creating a deadly battery.

24...h5

罩xe5 +-.

25 🗹 h6

Even better is 25 罩f7+ ��g8 26 ②h6#. 1-0

41) Harikrishna – Svidler Dresden Olympiad 2008

25 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xe6!

White breaks in thanks to his light-square domination.

25...罩ab8 white queen switches to the h-file. The attack

proves to be decisive since White has an enor-

會g7 29 營h6+ 含f6 30 全f5! and now: a) 30...罩xd6 31 豐xg6+ 含e7 32 罩e1+ 含d8

33 **≜**xd6 +−.

33 ⊈g3 and the checks are over.

豐h4+ 曾g7 34 皇h6+ 曾h7 35 皇f8#. 25... 對c8 is answered in a similar way: 26 豐e4 含h7 27 豐e3 fxe6 28 臭xe6 +--.

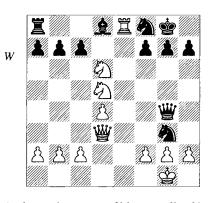
26 曾f3 夕c4 27 罩e7 1-0

42) Bukowska – Valickova Trinec 2001

White first makes use of the vulnerable back rank:

18...cxd6 19 罩e8+ 夕f8 20 臭xd6 臭c7 21

②e7+ 會h8 22 罩xa8 +-. 19 **≝e8+ ②f8** (D)



And now the power of his centralized knights. 20 罩xd8!! **曾g5**

This counterattack had to be foreseen, as

White's rook and king are both in danger. 20... **Zxd8** is met by 21 包e7+ \$h8 22 包xf7#. 1-0

21 營e3! ②e2+

Or: 21... 賞xe3 22 fxe3 +-; 21... 賞xd5 22 罩xa8 +-; 21...豐xd8 22 ②e7+ 豐xe7 (only move) 23 \subsection xe7 cxd6 24 hxg3 +-.

22 **營xe2 營xd5**

18 罩e8+!!

ing possibilities.

22... 響c1+ 23 響f1 響xf1+ 24 含xf1 罩xd8 25 ②e7+ \$\delta\$h8 26 ②xf7#. This mating mechanism works in most of the lines.

23 罩xa8 xd6 24 c3 a6 25 e8 g6 26 罩d8

43) Nakamura - N. Ninov

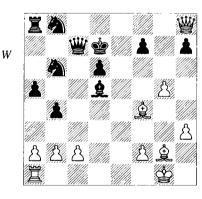
French Team Ch. Evry 2008

With this original idea, White traps the black rook on h8. As a result he wins all the black pawns on the kingside and preserves his attack-

18...曾xe8 19 曾xg7 皇xd5

19...\(\bar{\pi}\)f8 20 \(\bar{\pi}\)e1+ also does not rescue Black.

20 資xh8+ 含d7 (D)



Now White played 21 \(\begin{aligned} \begin{aligned} 21 \\ \begin{aligned} \begin{aligned} 21 \\ \begin{aligned} \begin{aligned} 21 \\ \begin{aligned} \begin{aligned} \begin{aligned} 21 \\ \begin{aligned} \begin{aligned} 21 \\ \begin{aligned} \begin{ win, but it was better to proceed with 21 \(\hat{L} xd5!\) ②xd5 22 豐xh7 豐c5 (22... ②xf4 23 豐xf7+ 會c6 24 豐xf4) 23 豐xf7+ 會c6 24 豐e8+ 會b7

25 \(\delta\)g3 \(\pm\) (as given by A.Kuzmin) with three pawns for the piece and a dangerous attack.

44) Illas – H. Blanco

Cuba 2004 1...g3+! 2 曾xg3 豐f4+!!

If you saw this idea to drag out the white king, I congratulate you!

3 含xf4 息e5+!

The king will be dragged into the heart of Black's position. As Nunn pointed out in John Nunn's Chess Puzzle Book, 3... \(\bar{\textit{2}}\)g8! also mates quickly.

4 ⋭25

4 曾xe5 包g6+ 5 曾d6 罩c8!! (6...包b7# is a

4...\$f6+ Even better was 4... Land (with the idea 5... 公g6

followed by 全f6#). Then 5 g4! 全f6+ 6 含f4 h4 7 g5 e5+ 8 曾g4 食d7# is a possible followup. However, the line in the game is equally strong.

5 \$f4

5 當xh5 罩h8+ 6 當g4 罩g8+ 7 當h5 罩g5+ 8

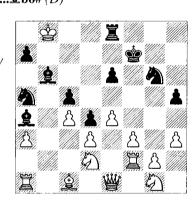
會h6 ②g8+9 會h7 罩h5#. 5...⊈h4!

Do not let the king back!

6 **⋭e**5

6 e5 ②g6+ 7 �e4 夏c6#.

9 �d6 ②b7#. 9....**皇b6#** (D)



(0-1)

45) Khenkin - Kariakin

Dresden Olympiad 2008

34...罩b1+ 35 罩f1 勺f4!

White has to part with his queen, since Black is also threatening 36... 4 h3#.

36 \(\bar{2}\) xe2+ 37 \(\bar{2}\) xe2 \(\bar{2}\) xf1+ 38 \(\ar{2}\) xf1 **營d3 39 &e1 營xa6 40 含f2 營c4 0-1**

since it will help the pawn to queen.

46) Babula – Gongora

Dresden Olympiad 2008

27 b6!

Thanks to the pins, Black has no good reply to this breakthrough.

The bishop is more important than the rook SOLUTIONS 187

28...exd5 29 **Qxd5**

The powerful bishop duet makes a pleasant aesthetic impression.

29...a6 30 🚉 xa8 🖺 xa8 31 b7 1-0

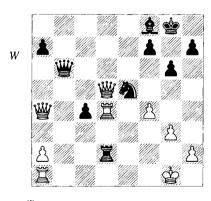
47) Barsov – D. Flores

Dresden Olympiad 2008
The position is anything but usual. White has

a great material advantage, but almost all the black pieces are full of energy. His only inactive piece had to join the battle now: 29...全c5+! 30 \$h1 \$\mathbb{E}\$e1+ (even better than the line advocated by Golubev: 30...豐xd5+!? 31 \$\mathbb{E}\$xd5 \$\ointimes\$163, when White is a whole queen ahead, but his only defence is to give it away for free: 32 \$\mathbb{E}\$e8+ \$\mathbb{E}\$xe8 33 \$\mathbb{E}\$g2 \$\mathbb{E}\$d4 and Black should be objectively winning) 31 \$\mathbb{E}\$g2 \$\mathbb{E}\$g1+ 32 \$\mathbb{E}\$h3 (32 \$\mathbb{E}\$xg1 \$\mathbb{E}\$xd5+ 33 \$\mathbb{E}\$h3 \$\ointimes\$2! is equally hopeless for White) 32...\$\mathbb{E}\$c8+ 33 \$\mathbb{E}\$ad7 \$\ointimes\$xd7 and Black has both a material advantage and a deci-

Instead, the game followed a very different course. Probably both players were in severe time-trouble, which would explain the tactical errors that occurred in the actual play:

29...豐b6+? 30 罩d4 罩d2 (D)



31 營xe5?!

sive attack.

After 31 當f1 罩xd4 32 營db5 營e6 33 營xe5 營h3+34 含e1 罩d7 White has a queen for just a bishop, but Black's pieces are very active. The best practical solution for him is then to part with some of the superfluous material by 35 罩d1! 罩e7 36 營xe7 魚xe7 37 營e8+ 魚f8 38 罩d8 營h6 39 罩c8 +—, when Black's pieces are completely tied up.

31...**黨xd4 32 豐aa5 黨d1++ 33 曾g2 黨d2+?**?

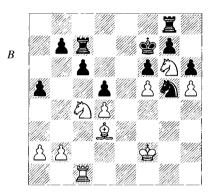
Further evidence of time-trouble. After the natural 33... xa5 34 xa5 xa1 35 xa7 c3

36 營a4 罩b1 the game would still have been unclear.

34 **營xd2 1-0**

48) Jobava – Rowson

Dresden Olympiad 2008 **38 ♦\c4!** (D)



A cunning double attack. Black needs to part with his a5-pawn, since 39 42d6# is a much more unpleasant threat...

38...≌d8

After 38...dxc4 39 \(\hat{2}\)xc4+ White wins an exchange in addition to the pawn.

39 公xa5 罩a8 40 b4 1-0

49) Topalov – Zhigalko

Dresden Olympiad 2008

39 罩xd5!

White has various ways of converting his huge advantage, but this small combination is both the shortest and the most beautiful way.

39...exd5 40 e6 1-0

Black resigned in the face of 40... 當f8 41 ②xc6+ 豐xc6 42 豐e7+ or 40... 當f6 41 ②xf6 gxf6 42 e7.

50) Radjabov – Kamsky

Dresden Olympiad 2008

Black has just committed a terrible mistake by 29...\$e7x\$e6??.

30 d5+!

This double decoy forces Black to part with material.

30...⊈f7

30...實7
There's nothing better: 30...黨xd5 31 包c7+; 30...資xd5 31 包c7#.

31 dxc6 bxc6 32 \(\bar{2}\)xb4 cxb5 33 \(\bar{2}\)xb8 +f4+ 34 \(\ar{2}\)xd3 35 \(\bar{2}\)xa7 \(\bar{2}\)a8 36 \(\bar{2}\)d4 1-0

Index of Players

BEREND - Bojkov 116

BETOTSKY - Ormos 92

BINDRICH - Nikolić, P. 164

When a player's name appears in **bold**, that player had White. Otherwise, the FIRST-NAMED PLAYER had White. An *italic* number signifies an exercise.

ABELLO – Zeynelabidin 73	Biriukov – Pogonina 118	CHIN, F. – Van Weersel 165
ACS – Cao Sang 172	BISTRIĆ – Gyimesi 180; Leventić	CHORVATOVA – Alexandrova 165
ADLY – Ramesh 25	184; Narančić 158	Chua – Pruess 185
AFEK – Gershaev 168	BJERKE, S. – Andersson, C. 88	CIFUENTES – Zviagintsev 106
Agafii – Bargan 138	BLAGOJEVIĆ – Čabrilo 39	CLAVERIE – Lemos 167
AGGELIS – Bojkov 13	BLANCO – Gongora 59; Illas 186	CMILYTE – Atalik, E. 184; Borić 165
ÅKESSON – Van Oosterom, C. 105	BLUVSHTEIN – Rowson 184	CONQUEST – Edouard 96
AKOBIAN – Onishchuk 161	BOBRAS – Wojtaszek 132	CORRALES – Ferragut 59
AKOPIAN – Bologan 179; Iotov 183;	BOJKOV – Aggelis 13; Alexandrov,	CORRALES JIMENEZ – Hungaski 162
Volkov 112	V. 78; Bayram 79; Berend 116;	COSMA, E. – Calzetta 183
Alanić – Saada <i>17</i> 2	Borisek 91; Delemarre 171;	CRAMLING, P. – Franco 58;
ALAVKIN Gleizerov 166	Ermenkov 57; Geirnaert 37;	Kovalevskaya 173
Aleksandrov, A. – Magalashvili	Larino 16; Maksimović, B.	Danilov – Vajda, A. 176
106	180; Misojčić 38; Murrey 80;	DANIN – Alexandrov 163
ALEXANDROV – Danin 163; Bojkov	Panbukchian 36; Parker 171;	Davies - Dive 166
78	Peredy 40; Schaufelberger 47;	DE JONG – Johannessen, L. 162
ALEXANDROVA – Chorvatova 165;	Van den Doel 134; Yasim 71	DE VREUGT – Groffen 146; Marin
Semionova 45	BOJKOVIĆ – Houska, J. 168	177; Mchedlishvili 181
ALMASI, Z. – Navara 176	BOKROS – Griffiths, R. 73	DELEMARRE – Bojkov 171
ALSINA LEAL – Fluvia Poyatos 104	BOLOGAN – Akopian 179; Heberla	DELGADO – Llorente 160
AMONATOV – Zemtsov 52	182; Markus 160	DIACHKOV – Vitiugov 181
AMURA – Ruan Lufei 174	BORIĆ – Cmilyte 165	DIAMANT – Fier 38
ANAND - Aronian 175; Kramnik	BORISEK – Bojkov 91	DIAZ CASTRO – Pogorelov 175
14, 176; Topalov 103, 135	Boros, D. – Hendriks 32	DIAZ, C. – Quesada 178
Andersson, C. – Bjerke, S. 88	BOSBOOM – Janssen 11	DIAZ, J. – Valdes 173
ANDONOV – Brkić 160	Boudre – Prié 74	DIMITRIJEVIĆ – Stokke, K. 181
ANDREIKIN – Efimenko 184	BRAUN - Carlsson, P. 168	DIMITROV, V. – Gligorić 86
ANDRENKO, I. – Muzychuk, M. 185	Brener - Casper 166; Georgiev, V.	DIVE – Davies 166
ARENCIBIA – Zapata 59	143	DJINGAROVA – Minina 183
ARONIAN – Anand 175; Gelfand 93;	BRISCOE – Marlow 165	DOETTLING – Gross, D. 147
Karpov 163; Polgar, J. 12;	BRKIĆ – Andonov 160	DOMINGUEZ, L Frois 176;
Shirov 64	BRNAS - Horvath, C. 162	Perez, R. 105
ASK – Bellon 174	BROEKMEULEN - Van Haastert 174	DREEV – Seirawan 7
ASRIAN – Karasev 173	BROMBERGER - Kremenietsky 184	DUBINSKY – Lapshun 82
ATAKISI – Spasov, V. 171	BRUNELLO – Rowson 24	DUDZINSKI – Mielczarski 162
ATALIK, E. – Cmilyte 184	BRUZON – Flores 9	DUMPOR – Stojanović 164
AVERIANOV – Aveskulov 175	Bu Xiangzhi – Topalov 109	DVOIRYS – Ushenina 168
AVESKULOV – Averianov 175	BUHMANN - Fedorchuk 19;	DWORAKOWSKA – Stefanova 146
AVRUKH – Raetsky 45;	Prusikhin 172	DYDYSHKO – Dziuba 179
Shavtvaladze 26	BUI VINH - Wang Puchen 161	Dzagnidze – Stefanova 178;
BABULA – Gongora 186	BUKOWSKA – Valickova 185	Sulskis 181
BACROT - Feller 170; Krasenkow	BULSKI – Flindt 161	DZHUMAEV - Kurnosov 158
18; Rausis 74	BYKHOVSKY, AN. – Sitnikov 159	Dziuba – Dydyshko 179
Banikas – Jojua 182	BYRON, A. – Motzer 60	ECHAVARRIA – Tovio 182
BARGAN – Agafii 138	ČABRILO – Blagojević 39; Matović	ECONOMESCU – Svetushkin 115
BARSOV – Flores, D. 187	165; Popović 173	EDOUARD – Conquest 96
BATSANIN – Inants 160	CACERES, J. – Nogueiras 168	EFIMENKO – Andreikin 184
BAUER, C. – Renet 85	CALZETTA – Cosma, E. 183	EFREMOV – Soloviev 165
Bayram – Bojkov 79	CAO SANG - Acs 172	EL DEBS – Pereira, S. 145
BELIAVSKY – Khamrakulov 39	CAPABLANCA – Winter 143	ELIANOV – Van Wely 175
BELKIN – Yuldachev 32	CARLSSON, P Braun 168	EPSTEIN – Tuvshintugs 65
BELLON – Ask 174	CARRON - Nemet 163	ERMENKOV – Bojkov 57;
BEN-PINCHAS - Freidles 120	CASPER – Brener 166	Khalifman 77
BERELOVICH - McNab 20	CHAN WENG CHEE - Ly Hong	ESPINOSA – Gonzalez, A. 54;
Depreson Dadless 116	N 61	Minus Ja 126, Danier V 127

Nguyen 61

CHEPARINOV - Navara 106

CHERNIAEV - Shaked 167

Miranda 136; Perez, Y. 137

ESQUIVEL – Gongora 163

ESTEVEZ, E. - Reyes, C. 178

FAHNENSCHMIDT – Tseitlin, Ma. 23	GRIGORYAN, A. – Staniszewski 112	Kantorik – Oral 73
FEDORCHUK – Buhmann 19	GRISHCHUK – Navara 93; Sutovsky	KANTSLER - Finkel 122; Malisov
FEDOROV – Lastin 164	180; Volokitin 41	167
FEDOROWICZ – Pieterse 46;	GRIVAS – Negi 165	KARASEV - Asrian 173
Vaganian 164	GROFFEN – De Vreugt 146	KARIAKIN - Khenkin 186;
FELGAER – Peralta 46	GROSS, D. – Doettling 147	Volokitin 40
FELLER – Bacrot 170	GUBAYDULIN – Kasyan 168	KARPOV – Aronian 163; Kasparov
FERNANDEZ CARDOSO – Gil Alba	GUERRERO – Gongora 120	141; Polgar, J. 180
24	GUNNARSSON - Miroshnichenko	KARTHIKEYAN – Ragger 105
FERRAGUT - Corrales 59	114	KASPAROV – Kamsky 127; Karpov
FICHTL – Hort 171	GUREVICH, M. – Jojua 184;	141; Portisch 114; Topalov 28
FIER – Diamant 38	Pavasović 87	KASYAN – Gubaydulin 168
FIGURA – Pruijssers 147	GUSEINOV – Lopez Martinez 98;	KAZHGALEEV – İnarkiev 33
FILIPOWICZ - Silva 41	Natarajan 24; Sulashvili 20	KERES - Fine 113
FILIPPOV – Muzammil 73	Gustafsson – Graf, A. 179	KHALIFMAN – Ermenkov 77
FINE – Keres 113	GYIMESI – Bistrić 180	Khamrakulov – Beliavsky 39
Finkel – Kantsler 122	HABA – Kachar 178	KHENKIN – Kariakin 186; Postny 81;
FLEUREN Murray 17	HANDKE – Hernandez, H. 168	Søndergaard, T. 173
FLINDT – Bulski 161	HANSEN, S.B. – Olafsson, H. 174	KHMELNITSKY – Kabatiansky 86
FLORES – Bruzon 9; Valerga 10;	Harikrishna – Singh, G. 161;	KHUZMAN – Yanev 182
Barsov 187	Svidler 185	KLIMOV – Ovechkin 33
FLUVIA POYATOS – Alsina Leal 104	HASAN – Jones, G. 161	KLOZA – Miszto 13
FOISOR, C. – Timoshenko 85	HASLINGER, S. – Knott 162	KNOTT – Haslinger, S. 162
FRANCO – Cramling, P. 58	HAZAI – Petrosian, A. 68	KOJOVIĆ – Ristić 181
FREIDLES – Ben-Pinchas 120	HEBDEN – Moser, E. 20; Spoelman	KOMANDINI – Maksimenko 108
FRESSINET – Macieja 170	172	KONOVALOV – Utiuganov 175
FRIDMAN – Wells 178; Mamedov, N. 183	HEBERLA – Bologan 182	KORCHNOI – Galliamova 173;
	HENDRIKS – Boros, D. 32; Michalczak 169	Shirov 173; Šolak 53 KOSIĆ – Garbisu 181
FRIDRIKSSON – Westin 107 FROIS – Dominguez, L. 176	HERNANDEZ, A. – Shoker 165	KOTANJIAN – Zysk 82
FROLIANOV – Yuzhakov 177	HERNANDEZ, H. – Handke 168	KOTOV – Simagin 131
FTAČNIK – Nayer 166	HERNANDEZ, J. – Fuentes, M. 176	KOUNALAKIS – Mastrovasilis 46
FUENTES, M. – Hernandez, J. 176	HERNANDEZ, R. – Martin, R. 169	KOVACS, G. – Horvath, A. 39
GAGUNASHVILI – Gelashvili 50	HORT – Fichtl 171	KOVALEVSKAYA – Cramling, P.
GALKIN – Liang Chong 172	HORVATH, A. – Kovacs, G. 39	173; Vasilevich, T. 182
GALLIAMOVA – Korchnoi 173	HORVATH, C. – Brnas 162	KRAAI – Todorović 180
GALOJAN – Tsiganova 99	HOUSKA, J. – Bojković 168	KRAMNIK - Anand 14, 176;
GARBISU – Kosić 181	HOWELL, J. – Vasiukov 88	Krasenkow 10; Topalov 103, 121
GARCIA PALERMO – Rowson 80	HUMPY KONERU – Murali Krishnan	KRASENKOW – Bacrot 18; Kramnik
GAVRILOV – Soloviov 178	23	10; Kveinys 135; Nakamura 30
GEIRNAERT – Bojkov 37; Pel 167	HUNGASKI – Corrales Jimenez 162	KRAVTSIV – Popov, I. 174;
GELASHVILI – Gagunashvili 50	HUNT, H. – Petrenko 162	Sieciechowicz 173
GELFAND – Aronian 93	IBRAGIMOV – Makarov, M. 164	KREMENIETSKY – Bromberger 184
GEORGIEV, KI. – Macieja 128;	ILLAS – Blanco, H. 186	KRIAKVIN – Kuligin 65
Vajda, L. 60	INANTS – Batsanin 160	KRITZ – Roiz 175
GEORGIEV, Kr. – Saada 18	INARKIEV – Kazhgaleev 33	KRIVORUCHKO – Narciso Dublan 169
GEORGIEV, V. – Brener 143; Kurajica 113; Paragua 129;	IONESI – Murariu 40 IONICA – Jianu <i>177</i>	KROEZE Pruijssers 170
Vallejo Pons 133; Wornath 144	IOTOV – Akopian 183	KULIGIN – Kriakvin 65
GERSHAEV – Afek 168	1PPOLITO – Pruess 159	KUPOROSOV – Yudasin 32
GIL ALBA – Fernandez Cardoso 24	IVANCHUK – Leko 145; Shirov 161	KURAJICA – Georgiev, V. 113
GLEIZEROV – Alavkin 166	JANSSEN – Bosboom 11	KURNOSOV – Dzhumaev 158
GLEK – Zapata 53	JASNY – Suchomel 81	KVEINYS – Krasenkow 135
GLIGORIĆ – Dimitrov, V. 86	JELICA – Lujan 166	L'AMI – Spoelman 169
GODENA – Trent 179	JIANU – Ionica 177	LANGROCK – Tiviakov 52
GOLDIN - Riabov 171	JOBAVA - Malakhov 144; Rowson	Lapshun – Dubinsky 82
GOLUBEV - Oleksienko 170	187	Larino – Bojkov 16
GONGORA - Babula 186; Blanco 59;	JOHANNESSEN, L. – De Jong 162	LASTIN - Fedorov 164
Esquivel 163; Guerrero 120	JOJUA – Banikas 182; Gurevich, M.	LE QUANG – Tiviakov 160
GONZALEZ, A Espinosa 54	184	LECHTYNSKY – Tupy 23
GONZALEZ, H Valdes 96	JONES, G Hasan 161; Madan 38;	LEENHOUTS - Seirawan 127
GONZALEZ, I. – Pulido 170	Williams, S. 169	LEKO – Ivanchuk 145; Mamedyarov
GONZALEZ PEREZ, A. – Placencia 48	KABATIANSKY – Khmelnitsky 86	107
GOROVYKH – Shimanov 161	KACHAR Haba 178	LEMOS – Claverie 167
GRAF, A. – Gustafsson 179	KAMSKY – Kasparov 127;	LEVENTIĆ – Bistrić 184; Narančić
GRIFFITHS, R. – Bokros 73	Radjabov 187	179

LI SHILONG - Wang Yue 166

LIANG CHONG - Galkin 172

LIGTERINK - Pachman 44

MORCHIASHVILI - Novikov, S. 168

PANTSULAIA - Swiercz 182

PARAGUA - Georgiev, V. 129

PAPIN - Ovechkin 18

MOISEEV - Luchinkin 108

MOROVIĆ - San Segundo 86

```
LILLEOREN - Zhu Chen 184
                                     MORTENSEN, H. - Marks, I. 88
                                                                          PARKER - Bojkov 171
LLORENTE - Delgado 160
                                     MOSER, E. – Hebden 20
                                                                          PASHIKIAN - Ozturk 45
                                                                          PAVASOVIĆ - Gurevich, M. 87
LOPEZ MARTINEZ - Guseinov 98
                                     MOTOC - Rohonyan, K. 185
LOVKOV - Siugirov 166
                                     MOTYLEV - Markos 182
                                                                          PEL - Geirnaert 167
LUCHINKIN - Moiseev 108
                                     MOTZER - Byron, A. 60
                                                                          PENG XIAOMIN - Speelman 31
LUJAN - Jelica 166; Tkeshelashvili
                                     MOVSESIAN – Stein, K. 161
                                                                          PEPTAN – Stefanova 170
    166
                                     Murali Krishnan – Humpy
                                                                          PERALTA - Felgaer 46
LY HONG NGUYEN - Chan Weng
                                         Koneru 23
                                                                          PEREDY - Bojkov 40; Malanca 12
                                     MURARIU - Ionesi 40
                                                                          PEREIRA, S. - El Debs 145
    Chee 61
MACAK - Nguyen Huynh Minh 158
                                     MURRAY - Fleuren 17
                                                                          Perez Felipe - Malakhatko 185
MACIEJA - Fressinet 170; Georgiev,
                                     MURREY - Boikov 80
                                                                          PEREZ, AN. - Ordonez 163
    Ki. 128: Simaček 172: Vescovi
                                                                          PEREZ, R. – Dominguez, L. 105
                                     MUSE - Mirumian 19
                                     MUZAMMIL - Filippov 73
    125
                                                                          PEREZ, Y. - Espinosa, E. 137;
MCNAB - Berelovich 20
                                     MUZYCHUK, M. - Andrenko, I. 185
                                                                              Martinez, L. 164
MADAN – Jones, G. 38
                                     NADIG - Rohit 87
                                                                          PETKOV, V. - Sanchez Guirado 162
                                                                          PETRENKO - Hunt, H. 162
MAGALASHVILI – Aleksandrov, A.
                                     NAIDITSCH – Mas 184
                                     NAKAMURA - Krasenkow 30;
                                                                          PETROSIAN, A. - Hazai 68
                                         Ninov, N. 186
MAKAROV, M. - Ibragimov 164;
                                                                          PIETERSE - Fedorowicz 46
    Volzhin 111
                                     NANU - Volokitin 166
                                                                          PLACENCIA - Gonzalez Perez, A. 48
                                                                          POGONINA - Biriukov 118
MAKSIMENKO - Komandini 108;
                                     NARANČIĆ - Bistrić 158; Leventić
    Nielsen, P.H. 138
                                                                          POGORELOV - Diaz Castro 175; Vila
MAKSIMOVIĆ, B. - Bojkov 180
                                     NARCISO DUBLAN - Krivoruchko
                                                                              Gazquez 167
MALAKHATKO - Ni Hua 120;
                                         169
                                                                          POLGAR, J. – Aronian 12; Karpov
    Ovechkin 180; Perez Felipe 185
                                     NATARAJAN - Guseinov, G. 24
                                                                              180; Romero 146
MALAKHOV - Jobava 144
                                     NAUMKIN - Nijboer 169
                                                                          PONCE - Ortiz 111
MALANCA - Peredy 12
                                                                          PONOMARIOV - Tiviakov 163
                                     NAVARA - Almasi, Z. 176;
MALETIN - Nayer 183; Riazantsev
                                         Cheparinov 106; Grishchuk 93;
                                                                          POPCHEV – Nestorović 56
                                         Svidler 92
                                                                          POPOV, I. - Kravtsiv 174
MALISOV - Kantsler 167
                                     NAYER - Ftačnik 166; Maletin 183;
                                                                          POPOVIĆ – Čabrilo 173
MAMEDOV, N. - Fridman, D. 183
                                         Nepomniashchy 167
                                                                          PORAT – Nguyen, H. 32
MAMEDYAROV - Leko 107; Svidler
                                     NEGI – Grivas 165
                                                                          PORTISCH - Kasparov 114
                                     NEMET - Carron 163;
                                                                          POSTNY - Khenkin 81
MARIN - De Vreugt 177
                                         Wirthensohn 51
                                                                          PRAZNIK - Stojanović 164
MARKOS - Motylev 182
                                     NEPOMNIASHCHY - Naver 167
                                                                          PRIÉ – Boudre 74
MARKOVIĆ – Zwanzger 170
                                     NESTOROVIĆ - Popchev 56
                                                                          PRITCHETT - Miles 69
MARKS, I. - Mortensen, H. 88
                                     NEVANLINNA – Sepp 158
                                                                          PRUESS - Chua 185; Ippolito 159
                                     NEVEDNICHY - Sokolov, A. 11
MARKUS - Bologan 160
                                                                          PRUIJSSERS - Figura 147; Kroeze
MARLOW - Briscoe 165
                                     NGUYEN - Macak 158; Porat 32
                                                                              170
MARTIN, R. - Hernandez, R. 169
                                     NI HUA - Malakhatko 120
                                                                          PRUSIKHIN – Buhmann 172
MARTINEZ, L. – Perez, Y. 164
                                     NIELSEN, P.H. – Maksimenko 138
                                                                          PULIDO – Gonzalez, I. 170
MARTINOVIĆ – Scherbakov 69
                                     NIJBOER - Naumkin 169
                                                                          QUESADA - Diaz, C. 178
                                                                          RADJABOV - Kamsky 187
MAS - Naiditsch 184
                                     NIKOLIĆ, P. - Bindrich 164;
                                         Swinkels 181
MASTROVASILIS – Kounalakis 46
                                                                          RAETSKY - Avrukh 45
MATOVIĆ – Čabrilo 165
                                     NINOV, N. - Nakamura 186
                                                                          RAFIZADEH – Truong 167
MCHEDLISHVILI - De Vreugt 181
                                     NIZAMOV - Varavin 65
                                                                          RAGGER - Karthikeyan 105
MECKING - Timman 81
                                     NOGUEIRAS - Caceres, J. 168
                                                                          RAMESH - Adly 25; Milov, V. 134
MEIJERS, V. - Milov, V. 179
                                     NOVIKOV, S. - Morchiashvili 168
                                                                          RAUSIS - Bacrot 74
MICHALCZAK - Hendriks 169
                                     OLAFSSON, H. - Hansen, S.B. 174
                                                                          Reinderman – Ushenina 67
MIELCZARSKI – Dudzinski 162
                                     OLEKSIENKO – Golubev 170
                                                                          RENET – Bauer, C. 85
MIKHAILUK - Mitkov 175
                                     OLL - Sokolov, I. 165
                                                                          REYES, C. - Estevez, E. 178
                                     OLSZEWSKI - Savchenko, S. 160
                                                                          RIABOV – Goldin 171
MILES - Pritchett 69
                                     ONISHCHUK - Akobian 161
MILOV, V. - Meijers, V. 179;
                                                                          RIAZANTSEV – Maletin 52;
    Ramesh 134
                                     ORAL – Kantorik 73
                                                                              Yandemirov 121
                                     ORDONEZ - Perez, An. 163
MININA - Djingarova 183
                                                                          RIBEIRO - Smirin 67
MIRANDA - Espinosa, E. 136
                                     ORMOS - Betotsky 92
                                                                          RISTIĆ - Kojović 181
MIROSHNICHENKO - Gunnarsson
                                     ORTIZ - Ponce 111
                                                                          RIVERA ~ Otero 97
    114; Turzo 25
                                     OTERO - Rivera 97
                                                                          RODRIGUEZ, AN. - Soto 180
MIRUMIAN - Muse 19
                                     OVECHKIN - Klimov 33;
                                                                          RODRIGUEZ, Y. - Sada 82
MISOJČIĆ - Bojkov 38
                                         Malakhatko 180; Papin 18
                                                                          ROESCHLAU - Simić, R. 66
MISZTO - Kloza 13
                                                                          ROGOVSKY - Tukhaev 119
                                     OZTURK – Pashikian 45
MITKOV - Mikhailuk 175
                                     PACHMAN - Ligterink 44
                                                                          ROGOZENKO - Voigt 46
MOISEENKO - Yuldachev 177;
                                     PÄHTZ, E. - Stefanova 46
                                                                          ROHIT - Nadig 87
   Zavgorodny 138
                                     Panbukchian - Bojkov 36
                                                                          ROHONYAN, K. - Motoc 185
```

VASILEVICH, T. - Kovalevskaya 182

VASIUKOV - Howell, J. 88

VAZNONIS – Sakalauskas 72

VAVRAK - Sutovsky 114

VESCOVI – Macieja 125

STEIN, K. - Movsesian 161

STELLWAGEN – Sargisian 126

STOKKE, K. - Dimitrijević 181

STOJANOVIĆ – Dumpor 164;

Praznik 164

ROIZ - Kritz 175; Savchenko, B. 183

Brunello 24; Garcia Palermo

Dzagnidze 178; Pähtz, E. 46;

Peptan 170; Tan Zhongyi 145

ROMERO - Polgar, J. 146

ROTSTEIN, A. - Wehner 163

ROWSON - Bluvshtein 184;

80; Jobava <i>187</i>	SUCHOMEL – Jasny 81	VILA GAZQUEZ – Pogorelov 167
RUAN LUFEI – Amura 174	SULASHVILI – Guseinov, G. 20	VITIUGOV – Diachkov 181;
RUBLEVSKY – Zviagintsev 87	SULSKIS – Dzagnidze 181	Vachier-Lagrave 184
RUSTEMOV – Sergienko 166	SURI – Saavedra, C. 81	VOIGT – Rogozenko 46
SAADA – Alanić 172; Georgiev, Kr.	SUTOVSKY – Grishchuk 180;	VOLKOV – Akopian 112
18	Vavrak 114	VOLOKITIN – Grishchuk 41;
SAAVEDRA, C. – Suri 81	SVETUSHKIN – Economescu 115	Kariakin 40; Nanu 166
SADA – Rodriguez, Y. 82	SVIDLER – Harikrishna 185;	Volzhin - Makarov, M. 111
SAKALAUSKAS – Vaznonis 72	Mamedyarov 132; Navara 92;	WADE – Short 159
SAN SEGUNDO – Morović 86	Shirov 9; Timofeev 174	WANG HAO - Shirov 179
SANCHEZ GUIRADO – Petkov, V.	SWIERCZ – Pantsulaia 182	WANG PUCHEN - Bui Vinh 161
162	Swinkels - Nikolić, P. 181	WANG YUE - Li Shilong 166
SANDULEAC – Varadi 173	TAN ZHONGYI – Stefanova 145	WEHNER – Rotstein, A. 163
SARGISIAN – Skoberne 170;	TATAI – Vancini 158	WELLS – Fridman 178
Stellwagen 126	TIMMAN – Mecking 81; Short 164;	WESTIN – Fridriksson 107
SAVCHENKO, B. – Roiz 183	Skembris 166	WILLIAMS, S. – Jones, G. 169
SAVCHENKO, S. – Olszewski 160	TIMOFEEV – Svidler 174	WINTER – Capablanca 143
SCHAUFELBERGER – Bojkov 47	TIMOSHENKO – Foisor, C. 85	WIRTHENSOHN - Nemet 51
SCHERBAKOV – Martinović 69	TIVIAKOV – Langrock 52; Le Quang	WOJTASZEK – Bobras 132
SEIRAWAN – Dreev 7; Leenhouts 127	160; Ponomariov 163	WORNATH – Georgiev, V. 144
SEMIONOVA – Alexandrova 45	TKESHELASHVILI – Lujan 166	WOZNIAK – Toczek 161
SEPP – Nevanlinna 158	TOCZEK – Wozniak 161	YAKUBOVICH – Simagin 128
SERGIENKO – Rustemov 166	TODOROV – Vasilev 99	YANDEMIROV – Riazantsev 121
SHAKED – Cherniaev 167	TODOROVIĆ – Kraai 180	YANEV – Khuzman 182
SHAVTVALADZE – Avrukh 26	TOPALOV – Anand 103, 135; Bu	YASIM – Bojkov 71
SHIMANOV – Gorovykh 161	Xiangzhi 109; Kasparov 28;	YE JIANGCHUAN – Short 174
SHIROV – Aronian 64; Ivanchuk 161;	Kramnik 103, 121; Vallejo Pons	YUDASIN – Kuporosov 32
Korchnoi 173; Svidler 9; Wang	136; Zhigalko 187	YULDACHEV – Belkin 32;
Hao 179	TOVIO – Echavarria 182; Zarate 137	Moiseenko 177
SHOKER – Hernandez, A. 165	TRENT - Godena 179	YUZHAKOV – Frolianov 177
SHORT – Timman 164; Wade 159; Ye Jiangchuan 174	TRUONG – Rafizadeh 167 TSEITLIN MA Februarehmidt 23	ZAKURDZHAEVA – Zimina 183 ZAPATA – Arencibia 59; Glek 53
_	TSEITLIN, MA. – Fahnenschmidt 23	,
SIEBRECHT – Van Haastert 181 SIECIECHOWICZ – Kravtsiv 173	TSIGANOVA – Galojan 99 TUKHAEV – Rogovsky 119	ZARATE – Tovio 137 ZAVGORODNY – Moiseenko 138
SILVA – Filipowicz 41	TUKHAEV – Rogovsky 119 TUPY – Lechtynsky 23	ZEMTSOV – Amonatov 52
SIMAČEK – Macieja 172	TURZO – Miroshnichenko 25	ZEYNELABIDIN – Abello 73
SIMACER – Wacieja 172 SIMAGIN – Kotov 131; Yakubovich	TUTULAN – Zhadanov 47	ZHADANOV – Tutulan 47
128	TUVSHINTUGS – Epstein 65	ZHIGALKO – Topalov 187
SIMIĆ, R. – Roeschlau 66	USHENINA – Dvoirys 168;	ZHU CHEN – Lilleoren 184
SINGH, G. – Harikrishna 161	Reinderman 67	ZIMINA – Zakurdzhaeva 183
SITNIKOV – Bykhovsky, An. 159	UTIUGANOV – Konovalov 175	ZVIAGINTSEV – Cifuentes 106;
SIUGIROV – Lovkov 166	VACHIER-LAGRAVE – Vitiugov 184	Rublevsky 87
SKEMBRIS – Timman 166	VAGANIAN – Fedorowicz 164	ZWANZGER – Marković 170
SKOBERNE – Sargisian 170	VAJDA, A. – Danilov 176	ZYSK – Kotanjian 82
SMIRIN – Ribeiro 67; Smyslov 107	VAJDA, L. – Georgiev, Ki. 60	2101. 220
SMYSLOV – Smirin 107	VALDES – Diaz, J. 173;	
SOKOLOV, A. – Nevednichy 11	Gonzalez, H. 96	Index of Composers
SOKOLOV, I. – Oll <i>165</i>	VALERGA – Flores 10	
ŠOLAK – Korchnoi 53	VALICKOVA – Bukowska 185	Afek, Y. 172
SOLOVIOV – Efremov 165;	VALLEJO PONS - Georgiev, V. 133;	Alekhine, A. 66
Gavrilov 178	Topalov 136	Averbakh, Y. 135
SØNDERGAARD, T. – Khenkin 173	Van den Doel – Bojkov 134	Beliavsky, Alb. 44
SOTO – Rodriguez, An. 180	VAN HAASTERT – Broekmeulen	Khachikov, A. 94
SPASOV, V. – Atakisi 171	174; Siebrecht 181	Lommer, H. 172
SPEELMAN – Peng Xiaomin 31	Van Oosterom, C. – Åkesson 105	Manvelian, A. 161
SPOELMAN – Hebden 172; L'Ami	VAN WEERSEL – Chin, F. 165	Nimzowitsch, A. 98
169	VAN WELY – Elianov 175	Petrov, D. 180
STANISZEWSKI – Grigoryan, A. 112	Vancini – Tatai 158	Pogosiants, E. 83, 129, 172, 177
STEFANOVA – Dworakowska 146;	VARADI – Sanduleac 173	Rinck, H. 162
D	11. m	D., J. 16 D 47

VARAVIN - Nizamov 65

VASILEV - Todorov 99

Rudolf, B.

67

Zakhodiakin, G. 97, 100, 173



book, with detailed solutions.

www.gambitbooks.com

The advice frequently given to chess-players eager to improve their results is straightforward: study tactics! But there is often little useful guidance as to how this is best done. By solving puzzle positions? Or endgame studies? By dissecting the games of great tacticians?

Few books present a structured approach to tactics, so this book fills a valuable niche in the ambitious player's library. The authors present each major tactical theme in turn, explaining how it works and providing inspiring examples. They then explain how you can spot the idea in your own games and use it to your advantage. You immediately get a chance to put your

knowledge to the test, as there are challenging exercises throughout the whole

The second part of the book offers more advanced material, and takes us inside the professional's tactics laboratory. Here we see how tactical themes are combined, and employed to achieve strategic goals. We are also shown how grandmasters spot the targets for their breathtaking combinations, which we thus come to see not as sheer witchcraft, but as the product of disciplined thought and training.

Bulgarian grandmaster **Dejan Bojkov** is an extremely active player and writer on chess, whose reports appear on Chessbase.com and in *Chess Today*, among many others.

Vladimir Georgiev is also a grandmaster from Bulgaria, who now plays for the Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia – he has won the national championship of both countries. He is the trainer of former Women's World Champion Antoaneta Stefanova.

